25

30

35

PROTEASE INHIBITORS

FIELD OF INVENITON

5 The present invention relates to novel protease inhibitors.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

One of the most active areas in cancer research is 10 the field of proteolytic enzymes and their role in the spread of cancer. One such class of protease that plays a significant role in the progression of cancer are the proteases, in particular Urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA). 15 Inhibitors of uPA have been postulated to be of therapeutic value in treating cancer. Inhibitors of these serine proteases also tend to be inhibitors of the closely related blood-clotting enzymes. One such blood-clotting enzyme is Factor Xa.

Factor Xa (herein after "FXa"), the converting enzyme of pro-thrombin to thrombin, has emerged as an alternative (to thrombin) target for drug discovery for thromboembolic disorders. A variety of compounds have been developed as potential FXa inhibitors.

Kunitada and Nagahara in Current Pharmaceutical Design, 1996, Vol. 2, No.5, report amidinobenzyl compounds as FXa and thrombin inhibitors. Disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,576,343 are aromatic amidine derivatives and salts thereof, as reversible inhibitors of FXa. These compounds comprise amidino substituted benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazoyl, benzothiazolyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl and indanyl groups, attached to a substituted phenyl ring by an alkylene group having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms.

In spite of the above discussed efforts, desirable treatment of cancer and thromboembolic disorders still remains elusive. There is thus a need for new compounds that will be effective in inhibiting serine proteases,

such as Urokinase, and blood-clotting enzymes such as FXa. Keeping these needs in mind, the present invention provides novel inhibitors as discussed below.

5 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to compounds of Formula I:

10 A-B

its prodrug forms, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein

A represents a saturated, unsaturated, or a partially unsaturated bicyclic heterocyclic ring structure substituted with R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , R^9 , and R^{20} ; B represents

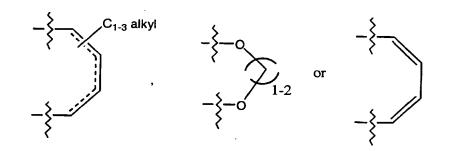
20

25 R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 independently at each occurance represent H, SH, OR^{10} , halogen, $COOR^{10}$, $CONR^{11}R^{12}$, optionally substituted aryl, optionally substituted heterocyclyl, C_{4-14} cycloalkyl- C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl aryl, optionally substituted C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, C_{1-4} $COCC_{1-4}$ CCC_{1-4} $CCCC_{1-4}$ CCC_{1-4} $CCCC_{1-4}$ CCC_{1-4} CCC_{1-4} CC

 $C(O)-C_{0-3}-alkyl-optionally$ substituted aryl, O-substituted cycloalkyl, O- $(CH_2)_{0-6}$ -optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-NH-C(O)O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-PhR^{13}R^{14}$, NO_2 , O- $(CH_2)_{0-4}-C(O)-NH-tetrahydro carboline, <math>NR^{10}R^{28}$, O- $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -optionally substituted het, CH_2COOCH_3 , $CH=CH-COOCH_3$, 5-amidino benzimidazole,

$$- \left\{ -E - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_2 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0-4} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0-4} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_3 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0-4} - Q_3 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0-4} - Q_3 - Q_3$$

alternatively R^2 and R^3 taken together form



10

 R^6 and R^9 independently at each occurance represents H, halogen, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} halogenated alkyl, NO_2 , 0-aryl or OR^{11} ;

R' and R⁸ independently at each occurance represent OH, CF₃, H, NO₂, C₁₋₄ alkyl, OC₁₋₄ alkyl, or O-aryl, halogen, cyano, or a basic group selected from guanidino, C(=NH)N(R¹⁰)₂, C(=NH)-NH-NH₂, C(=O)NH₂, 2-imidazoline, N-amidinomorpholine, N-amidino piperidine, 4-hydroxy-N-amidino piperidine, N-amidino pyrrolidine, tetrahydro pyrimidine, and thiazolidin-3-yl-methylideneamine; with the proviso that only one of R' and R⁸ represent a basic group;

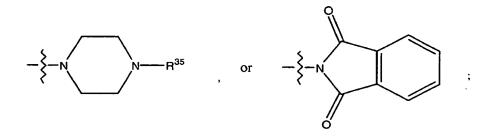
 R^{10} independently at each occurance represents H, $(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -25 aryl, C_{1-4} halo alkyl, or C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, and alternatively, when one atom is

substituted with two R^{10} groups, the atom along with the R^{10} groups can form a five to 10 membered ring structure; R^{11} and R^{12} independently at each occurance represent H or C_{1-4} alkyl;

- 10 $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -COOH; $R^{24} \text{ represents } R^{10}, \quad (CH_2)_{1-4} \text{-optionally substituted aryl,}$ $(CH_2)_{0-4}OR^{10}, \quad CO-(CH_2)_{1-2}-N(R^{10})_2, \quad CO(CH_2)_{1-4}-OR^{10}, \quad (CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10},$ $(CH_2)_{0-4}-N(R^{10})_2, \quad SO_2R^{10}, \quad COR^{10}, \quad CON(R^{10})_2, \quad (CH_2)_{0-4}-aryl-COOR^{10},$ $(CH_2)_{0-4}-aryl-N(R^{10})_2, \quad or \quad (CH_2)_{1-4}-het-aryl;$
- 15 R^{28} represents $(CH_2)_{1-2}$ -Ph-O- $(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -het- R^{30} , C(O)-het, CH_2 -Ph- CH_2 -het- $(R^{30})_{1-3}$; $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -cyclohexyl- R^{31} , CH_2 -Ph-O-Ph- $(R^{30})_{1-2}$, CH_2 - (CH_2OH) -het- R^{30} , CH_2 -Ph-O-cycloalkyl- R^{31} , CH_2 -het-C(O)- CH_2 -het- R^{30} , or CH_2 -Ph-O- (CH_2) -O-het- R^{30} ;

 R^{30} represents $SO_2N(R^{10})_2$, H, NHOH, amidino, or $C(=NH)CH_3$;

- 20 R³¹ represents R³⁰, amino-amidino, NH-C(=NH)CH₃ or R¹⁰; R³² represents H, C(O)-CH₂-NH₂, or C(O)-CH(CH(CH₃)₂)-NH₂; R³³ and R³⁴ independently at each occurance represent R¹⁰, (CH₂)₀₋₄-Ar, optionally substituted aryl, (CH₂)₀₋₄ optionally substituted heteroaryl, (CH₂)₁₋₄-CN, (CH₂)₁₋₄-N(R¹⁰)₂, (CH₂)₁₋₄-
- OH, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-SO_2-N(R^{10})_2$; alternatively, R^{33} and R^{34} along with the nitrogen atom that they are attached to forms a 4 to 14 atom ring structure selected from tetrahydro-1H-carboline; 6,7-Dialkoxyoxy-2-substituted 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-
- 30 isoquinoline,



30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

 R^{15} represents R^{10} , SO_2-R^{10} , COR^{10} , or $CONHR^{10}$;

E represents a bond, S(O)₀₋₂, O or NR¹⁰;

 W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 independently represent C or N; and

Q, Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , L^1 , L^2 , L^3 and L^4 independently at each occurance represent N-natural or unnatural amino acid side chain, CHR^{10} , O, NH, $S(O)_{0-2}$, N-C(O)-NHR¹⁰, SO_2 -N(R¹⁰)₂, N-C(O)-NH-(CH₂)₁₋₄-R²⁶, NR¹⁰, N-heteroaryl, N-C(=NH)-NHR¹⁰, or N-C(=NH)C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R²⁶ represents OH, NH,, or SH;

provided that, (i) when R¹ = OH; R² = amidine; R², R6, R8, R9, and R²0 each represent H; and R³, R⁴, R⁵ are independently chosen from H, CH₃, and halogen, then only one of R³, R⁴, and R⁵ represents H; (ii) when R¹ = OH; R² = amidine; R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, and R²0 each represent H; and R⁶, R³, R9 are independently chosen from H, CH₃, and halogen, then only one of R⁶, R³, and R³ represents H; (iii) at least two of W₁, W₂, W₃ and W₄ represent C and at least one of W₁, W₂, W₃ and W₄ represent N; and (iv) when R¹ = OH; R² = amidine; and R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, R⁶, R³, and R9, represent H,

Also provided by the present invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

The present invention also provides a method for treating or preventing a thromboembolic disorder, comprising administering to a patient in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Provided by the present invention is a compound of 35 Formula I:

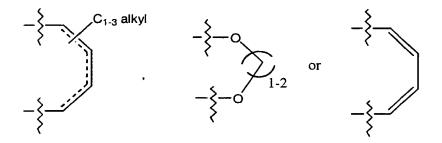
its prodrug forms, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein

A represents a saturated, unsaturated, or a partially unsaturated bicyclic heterocyclic ring structure substituted with R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R⁹, and R²⁰;
B represents

 R^1 represents OH, halogen, COOH, COO- C_{1-4} alkyl, O-(CH₂)₀₋₁~ Ph, $N(R^{10})_2$, CH_2OR^{10} , C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-CO N(R^{10})_2$, SC_{1-4} alkyl, $NHSO_2C_{1-4}$ alkyl, SO_2-OH , $O-SO_2-OH$, $O-SO_2-OH$ $O-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, $OP(O)(OH)_2$, or OPO_3C_{1-4} alkyl; $R^2, \quad R^3, \quad R^4, \quad \text{and} \quad R^5 \quad \text{independently at each occurance}$ represent H, SH, OR10, halogen, COOR10, CONR11R12, optionally 15 substituted aryl, optionally substituted heterocyclyl, C. $cycloalkyl-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl aryl, optionally substituted C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, $O-(CH_{2})_{2-6}-NR^{10}-(CH_{2})_{0-3}-R^{24}, \qquad NR^{10}R^{24}, \qquad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NR^{33}R^{34}, \qquad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-R^{33}R^{34}, \qquad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-R^{34}R^{34}, \qquad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-R^{34}R^{34}, \qquad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-R^{34}R^$ ${\rm COOR}^{33}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-CO-het}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-NH-CO-aryl}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-$ 20 $NR^{10}-CO-NR^{10}R^{33}$, $O-(CH_2)_{0-2}-C(O)-NR^{33}R^{34}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}$ (CH₂)₁₋₃-het-R³², O-optionally substituted cycloalkyl, O- $(CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10} - COO - t - butyl$, $O - (CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10}R^{33}$, $O - (CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10} - R^{10}R^{10}$ $C(0)-C_{0-3}-alkyl-optionally$ substituted aryl, 0-substituted cycloalkyl, $O-(CH_2)_{0-6}$ -optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{1-6}$ -25 ${\rm NH-C\,(O)\,O-\,(CH_2)_{\,1-4}-PhR^{13}R^{14}}\,, \qquad {\rm NO_2}\,, \quad {\rm O-\,(CH_2)_{\,0-4}-C\,(O)\,-NH-tetrahydro}$ carboline, $NR^{10}R^{28}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -optionally substituted het, CH,COOCH, CH=CH-COOCH, 5-amidino benzimidazole,

$$- \left\{ -E - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_2 \right\} \right\}$$
 or
$$- \left\{ -O - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ -C - CH_2 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - CO - CH_2 \right\} \right\}$$

alternatively R2 and R3 taken together form



5

10

15

20

25

 R^6 and R^9 independently at each occurance represents H, halogen, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} halogenated alkyl, NO_2 , O-aryl or OR^{11} ;

 R^7 and R^8 independently at each occurance represent OH, CF_3 , H, NO_2 , C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, or 0-aryl, halogen, cyano, or a basic group selected from guanidino, $C(=NH)N(R^{10})_2$, $C(=NH)-NH-NH_2$, $C(=O)NH_2$, 2-imidazoline, N-amidinomorpholine, N-amidino piperidine, 4-hydroxy-N-amidino piperidine, N-amidino pyrrolidine, tetrahydro pyrimidine, and thiazolidin-3-yl-methylideneamine; with the proviso that only one of R^7 and R^8 represent a basic group;

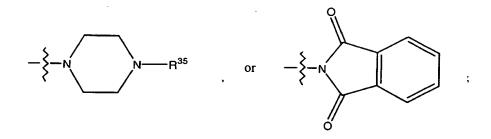
 R^{10} independently at each occurance represents H, $(CH_2)_{0.2}$ -aryl, $C_{1.4}$ halo alkyl, or $C_{1.14}$ straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, and alternatively, when one atom is substituted with two R^{10} groups, the atom along with the R^{10} groups can form a five to 10 membered ring structure; R^{11} and R^{12} independently at each occurance represent H or $C_{1.14}$ alkyl;

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

 $R^{20} \text{ represents } R^{24}, \quad C_{1-4}-alkyl, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-3}-biphenyl, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-Ph-N(SO_{2}-C_{1-2}-alkyl)_{2}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NH-C(O)-R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NH-SO_{2}-R^{24}, \\ halogen, \quad COOR^{10}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-Ph-N(SO_{2}-C_{1-2}alkyl)_{1}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NR^{10}-C(O)-R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NR^{10}-SO_{2}-R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-het, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-CON(R^{10})_{2}, \\ C(O)-R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-NR^{10}-SO_{2}-R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-het, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-CON(R^{10})_{2}, \\ (CH_{2})_{1-4}-N(R^{10})-C(O)-NR^{10}R^{24}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-N(R^{10})-C(S)-NR^{10}R^{24}, \quad or \\ (CH_{2})_{1-3}-COOH; \\ R^{24} \text{ represents } R^{10}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-optionally \text{ substituted aryl,} \\ (CH_{2})_{0-4}OR^{10}, \quad CO-(CH_{2})_{1-2}-N(R^{10})_{2}, \quad CO(CH_{2})_{1-4}-OR^{10}, \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-COOR^{10}, \\ (CH_{2})_{0-4}-N(R^{10})_{2}, \quad SO_{2}R^{10}, \quad COR^{10}, \quad CON(R^{10})_{2}, \quad (CH_{2})_{0-4}-aryl-COOR^{10}, \\ (CH_{2})_{0-4}-aryl-N(R^{10})_{2}, \quad or \quad (CH_{2})_{1-4}-het-aryl; \\ R^{28} \text{ represents } (CH_{2})_{1-2}-Ph-O-(CH_{2})_{0-2}-het-R^{30}, \quad C(O)-het, \quad CH_{2}-Ph-CH_{2}-het-(R^{30})_{2}, \quad (CH_{2})_{3-2}-Ph-O-(CH_{2})_{3-2}-het-R^{30}, \quad C(O)-het, \quad CH_{2}-Ph-CH_{2}-het-(R^{30})_{2}, \quad (CH_{2})_{3-2}-Ph-O-(CH_{2})_{3-$

15 R^{30} represents $SO_2N(R^{10})_2$, H, NHOH, amidino, or $C(=NH)CH_3$; R^{31} represents R^{30} , amino-amidino, $NH-C(=NH)CH_3$ or R^{10} ; R^{32} represents H, $C(O)-CH_2-NH_2$, or $C(O)-CH(CH(CH_3)_2)-NH_2$; R^{33} and R^{34} independently at each occurance represent R^{10} , $(CH_2)_{0-4}-Ar$, optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{0-4}$ optionally substituted heteroaryl, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-CN$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-N(R^{10})_2$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-OH$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-SO_2-N(R^{10})_2$;

alternatively, R³³ and R³⁴ along with the nitrogen atom that they are attached to forms a 4 to 14 atom ring structure selected from tetrahydro-1H-carboline; 6,7-Dialkoxyoxy-2-substituted 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-isoguinoline.



30 R^{35} represents R^{10} , SO_2-R^{10} , COR^{10} , or $CONHR^{10}$; E represents a bond, $S(O)_{0-2}$, O or NR^{10} ; W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 independently represent C or N; and

15

20

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Q, Q¹, Q², Q³, L¹, L², L³ and L⁴ independently at each occurance represent N-natural or unnatural amino acid side chain, CHR^{10} , O, NH, $S(O)_{0-2}$, N-C(O)-NHR¹⁰, SO_2 -N(R¹⁰)₂, N-C(O)-NH-(CH₂)₁₋₄-R²⁶, NR¹⁰, N-heteroaryl, N-C(=NH)-NHR¹⁰, or N-C(=NH)C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R²⁶ represents OH, NH₂, or SH;

provided that, (i) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; R^2 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , and R^{20} each represent H; and R^3 , R^4 , R^5 are independently chosen from H, CH_3 , and halogen, then only one of R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 represents H; (ii) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , and R^{20} each represent H; and R^6 , R^8 , R^9 are independently chosen from H, CH_3 , and halogen, then only one of R^6 , R^8 , and R^9 represents H; (iii) at least two of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent C and at least one of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent N; and (iv) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; and R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , and R^9 , represent H, R^{20} cannot be CH_3 .

A preferred embodiment of the present invention provides a compound of Formula I:

A-BFormula I

its prodrug forms, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein

25 A represents

$$\mathbb{R}^7$$
 \mathbb{R}^6
 \mathbb{R}^7
 \mathbb{R}^8
 \mathbb{R}^{20}
 \mathbb{R}^8

B represents

15

20

 R^1 represents OH, halogen, COOH, COO- C_{1-4} alkyl, O-(CH_2)₀₋₁-Ph, $N(R^{10})_2$, CH_2OR^{10} , C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-CO-(CH_2)_{1-6}$ $N(R^{10})_2$, SC_{1-4} alkyl, $NHSO_2C_{1-4}$ alkyl, SO_2-OH , $O-SO_2-OH$, $O-SO_2-OH$ $O-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, $OP(O)(OH)_2$, or OPO_3C_{1-4} alkyl; R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 independently at each represent H, SH, OR10, halogen, COOR10, CONR11R12, optionally substituted aryl, optionally substituted heterocyclyl, C_{A} ${\tt cycloalkyl-C_{1-4} \quad alkyl, \quad C_{1-4} \quad alkyl \quad aryl, \quad optionally}$ substituted C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, $O-\left(CH_{_{2}}\right)_{_{2-6}}-NR^{_{10}}-\left(CH_{_{2}}\right)_{_{0-3}}-R^{_{24}},\qquad NR^{_{10}}R^{_{24}},\qquad \left(CH_{_{2}}\right)_{_{1-4}}-NR^{_{33}}R^{_{34}},\qquad \left(CH_{_{2}}\right)_{_{1-4}}-R^{_{10}}R^{_{10}}R^{_{10}}$ ${\rm COOR}^{33}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-CO-het}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-NH-CO-aryl}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-NH-CO-aryl}, \quad {\rm O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-het}$ $NR^{10}-CO-NR^{10}R^{33}$, $O-(CH_2)_{0-2}-C(O)-NR^{33}R^{34}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10}$ $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -het- R^{32} , O-optionally substituted cycloalkyl, O- $(CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10} - COO - t - butyl$, $O - (CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10}R^{33}$, $O - (CH_2)_{1-4} - NR^{10} - COO - t - butyl$ $C(0)-C_{0-3}-alkyl-optionally$ substituted aryl, 0-substituted cycloalkyl, $O-(CH_2)_{0-6}$ -optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ - ${\rm NH-C\,(O)\,O-\,(CH_2)_{\,{}_{1\text{-}4}}-PhR^{13}R^{14}}\,, \qquad {\rm NO_2}\,, \quad {\rm O-\,(CH_2)_{\,{}_{0\text{-}4}}-C\,(O)\,-NH-tetrahydro}$ carboline, $NR^{10}R^{28}$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -optionally substituted het, CH₂COOCH₃, CH=CH-COOCH₃, 5-amidino benzimidazole,

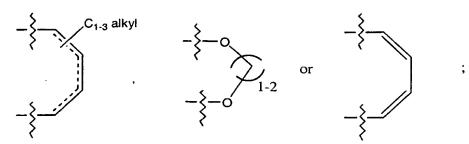
$$- \left\{ -E - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_2 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} -$$

alternatively R^2 and R^3 taken together form

10

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302



 R^6 and R^9 independently at each occurance represents H, halogen, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} halogenated alkyl, NO_2 , O-aryl or OR^{11} ;

 R^7 and R^8 independently at each occurance represent OH, $CF_3,\ H,\ NO_2,\ C_{1-4}$ alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, or 0-aryl, halogen, cyano, or a basic group selected from guanidino, $C\,(=NH)\,N\,(R^{10})_2,\ C\,(=NH)\,-NH-NH_2,\ C\,(=O)\,NH_2,\ 2-imidazoline,\ N-amidino morpholine,\ N-amidino piperidine,\ 4-hydroxy-N-amidino piperidine,\ N-amidino pyrrolidine, tetrahydro pyrimidine, and thiazolidin-3-yl-methylideneamine; with the proviso that only one of <math display="inline">R^7$ and R^8 represent a basic group;

15 R^{10} independently at each occurance represents H, $(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -aryl, C_{1-4} halo alkyl, or C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, and alternatively, when one atom is substituted with two R^{10} groups, the atom along with the R^{10} groups can form a five to 10 membered ring structure;

20 R^{11} and R^{12} independently at each occurance represent H or $C_{1.4}$ alkyl;

25 $C(O)-R^{24}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-NR^{10}-SO_2-R^{24}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-het$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-CON(R^{10})_2$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-N(R^{10})-C(O)-NR^{10}R^{24}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-N(R^{10})-C(S)-NR^{10}R^{24}$, or $(CH_2)_{1-3}-COOH$;

 R^{24} represents R^{10} , $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{0-4}OR^{10}$, $CO-(CH_2)_{1-2}-N(R^{10})_2$, $CO(CH_2)_{1-4}-OR^{10}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^$

 $(CH_{2})_{0-4}-N(R^{10})_{2}$, $SO_{2}R^{10}$, COR^{10} , $CON(R^{10})_{2}$, $(CH_{2})_{0-4}-aryl-COOR^{10}$, $(CH_{2})_{0-4}-aryl-N(R^{10})_{2}$, or $(CH_{2})_{1-4}-het-aryl$;

$$\begin{split} \text{R}^{28} \text{ represents } & \left(\text{CH}_{2}\right)_{1\text{-}2} - \text{Ph-O-}\left(\text{CH}_{2}\right)_{0\text{-}2} - \text{het-R}^{30}, \quad \text{C(O)-het, } \quad \text{CH}_{2} - \text{Ph-CH}_{2} - \text{CH}_{2} - \text{het-}\left(\text{R}^{30}\right)_{1\text{-}3}; \qquad \left(\text{CH}_{2}\right)_{1\text{-}4} - \text{cyclohexyl-R}^{31}, \quad \text{CH}_{2} - \text{Ph-O-Ph-}\left(\text{R}^{30}\right)_{1\text{-}2}, \end{split}$$

 $CH_2-(CH_2OH)-het-R^{30}$, $CH_2-Ph-O-cycloalkyl-R^{31}$, $CH_2-het-C(O)-CH_2-het-R^{30}$, or $CH_2-Ph-O-(CH_2)-O-het-R^{30}$;

 R^{30} represents $SO_2N(R^{10})_2$, H, NHOH, amidino, or $C(=NH)CH_3$; R^{31} represents R^{30} , amino-amidino, NH-C(=NH)CH, or R^{10} ;

5 R^{32} represents H, $C(0) - CH_2 - NH_2$, or $C(0) - CH(CH(CH_3)_2) - NH_2$; R^{33} and R^{34} independently at each occurance represent R^{10} , $(CH_2)_{0-4} - Ar$, optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{0-4}$ optionally substituted heteroaryl, $(CH_2)_{1-4} - CN$, $(CH_2)_{1-4} - N(R^{10})_2$, $(CH_2)_{1-4} - OH$, $(CH_2)_{1-4} - SO_2 - N(R^{10})_2$;

alternatively, R³³ and R³⁴ along with the nitrogen atom that they are attached to forms a 4 to 14 atom ring structure selected from tetrahydro-1H-carboline; 6,7-Dialkoxyoxy-2-substituted 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-isoquinoline,

15

 R^{35} represents R^{10} , SO_2-R^{10} , COR^{10} , or $CONHR^{10}$; E represents a bond, $S(O)_{0-2}$, O or NR^{10} ;

20 W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 independently represent C or N; and Q, Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , L^1 , L^2 , L^3 and L^4 independently at each occurance represent N-natural or unnatural amino acid side chain, CHR^{10} , O, NH, $S(O)_{0-2}$, N-C(O)-NHR¹⁰, SO_2 -N(R¹⁰)₂, N-C(O)-NH-(CH₂)₁₋₄-R²⁶, NR¹⁰, N-heteroaryl, N-C(=NH)-NHR¹⁰, or N-C(=NH)C₁₋₄ alkyl;

R²⁶ represents OH, NH₂, or SH;
provided that, (i) when R¹ = OH; R⁷ = amidine; R², R⁶, R⁸,
R⁹, and R²⁰ each represent H; and R³, R⁴, R⁵ are
independently chosen from H, CH₃, and halogen, then only
one of R³, R⁴, and R⁵ represents H; (ii) when R¹ = OH; R⁷ =
amidine; R², R³, R⁴, R⁵, and R²⁰ each represent H; and R⁶,
R⁸, R⁹ are independently chosen from H, CH₃, and halogen,

then only one of R⁶, R⁸, and R⁹ represents H; (iii) at

20

25

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

least two of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent C and at least one of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent N; and (iv) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; and R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , and R^9 , represent H, R^{20} cannot be CH_3 .

A further preferred embodiment provides a compound of Formula I wherein:

A-B

its prodrug forms, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein

A represents

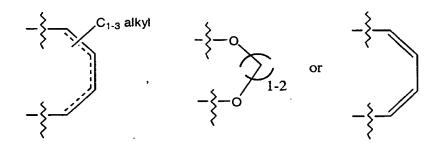
$$\mathbb{R}^7$$
 \mathbb{R}^8
 \mathbb{R}^9
or
 \mathbb{R}^8
 \mathbb{R}^9

B represents

 R^1 represents OH, halogen, COOH, COO- C_{1-4} alkyl, O- $(CH_2)_{0-1}$ -Ph, $N(R^{10})_2$, CH_2OR^{10} , C_{1-6} halogenated alkyl, O- $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -CO- $N(R^{10})_2$, SC_{1-4} alkyl, NHSO $_2$ C $_{1-4}$ alkyl, SO $_2$ -OH, O-SO $_2$ -OH, O-SO $_2$ -O- C_{1-4} alkyl, OP(O)(OH) $_2$, or OPO $_3$ C $_{1-4}$ alkyl; R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 independently at each occurance represent H, SH, OR 10 , halogen, COOR 10 , CONR 11 R 12 , optionally substituted aryl, optionally substituted heterocyclyl, C $_{1-4}$ cycloalkyl- C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl aryl, optionally substituted C $_{1-14}$ straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, C_{1-4} O- $(CH_2)_{2-6}$ -NR 10 - $(CH_2)_{0-3}$ -R 24 , NR^{10} R 24 , $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -NR 33 R 34 , $(CH_2)_{1-4}$

$$- \left\{ -E - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ Q_1 - Q_2 - Q_3 - CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - \left\{ -CO - NR^{10} - (CH_2)_{0^{-4}} - CO - NR^{10$$

alternatively R2 and R3 taken together form



15

20

25

10

 R^6 and R^9 independently at each occurance represents H, halogen, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} halogenated alkyl, NO_2 , 0-aryl or OR^{11} ;

 R^{7} and R^{8} independently at each occurance represent OH, CF_{3} , H, NO_{2} , C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, or 0-aryl, halogen, cyano, or a basic group selected from guanidino, $C(=NH)N(R^{10})_{2}$, $C(=NH)-NH-NH_{2}$, $C(=O)NH_{2}$, 2-imidazoline, N-amidino morpholine, N-amidino piperidine, 4-hydroxy-N-amidino piperidine, N-amidino pyrrolidine, tetrahydro pyrimidine, and thiazolidin-3-yl-methylideneamine; with

the proviso that only one of R^7 and R^8 represent a basic group;

 R^{10} independently at each occurance represents H, $(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -aryl, C_{1-4} halo alkyl, or C_{1-14} straight chain, branched or cyclo alkyl, and alternatively, when one atom is substituted with two R^{10} groups, the atom along with the R^{10} groups can form a five to 10 membered ring structure; R^{11} and R^{12} independently at each occurance represent H or C_{1-4} alkyl;

- 15 $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -COOH; R^{24} represents R^{10} , $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -optionally substituted aryl, $(CH_2)_{0-4}OR^{10}$, $CO-(CH_2)_{1-2}-N(R^{10})_2$, $CO(CH_2)_{1-4}-OR^{10}$, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOR^{10}$, $(CH_2)_{0-4}-N(R^{10})_2$, SO_2R^{10} , COR^{10} , $CON(R^{10})_2$, $(CH_2)_{0-4}$ -aryl- $COOR^{10}$, $(CH_2)_{0-4}$ -aryl- $N(R^{10})_2$, or $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -het-aryl;
- 20 R^{28} represents $(CH_2)_{1-2}$ -Ph-O- $(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -het- R^{30} , C(O)-het, CH_2 -Ph- CH_2 -het- $(R^{30})_{1-3}$; $(CH_2)_{1-4}$ -cyclohexyl- R^{31} , CH_2 -Ph-O-Ph- $(R^{30})_{1-2}$, CH_2 - (CH_2OH) -het- R^{30} , CH_2 -Ph-O-cycloalkyl- R^{31} , CH_2 -het-C(O)- CH_2 -het- R^{30} , or CH_2 -Ph-O- (CH_2) -O-het- R^{30} ; R^{30} represents SO,N(R^{10}), H, NHOH, amidino, or C(ENH) CH3;
- 25 R³¹ represents R³⁰, amino-amidino, NH-C(=NH)CH₃ or R¹⁰; R³² represents H, C(O)-CH₂-NH₂, or C(O)-CH(CH(CH₃)₂)-NH₂; R³³ and R³⁴ independently at each occurance represent R¹⁰, (CH₂)₀₋₄-Ar, optionally substituted aryl, (CH₂)₀₋₄ optionally substituted heteroaryl, (CH₂)₁₋₄-CN, (CH₂)₁₋₄-N(R¹⁰)₂, (CH₂)₁₋₄-
- OH, $(CH_2)_{1-4}-SO_2-N(R^{10})_2$; alternatively, R^{33} and R^{34} along with the nitrogen atom that they are attached to forms a 4 to 14 atom ring structure selected from tetrahydro-1H-carboline; 6,7-Dialkoxyoxy-2-substituted 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-
- 35 isoquinoline,

20

 R^{35} represents R^{10} , SO_2-R^{10} , COR^{10} , or $CONHR^{10}$; E represents a bond, $S(O)_{0-2}$, O or NR^{10} ;

 W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 independently represent C or N; and W_4 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , W_4 , W_4 , W_5 , W_5 , W_6 , W_7 , W_8 , W_8 , W_8 , W_8 , W_9

R²⁶ represents OH, NH₂, or SH;

provided that, (i) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; R^2 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 , and R^{20} each represent H; and R^3 , R^4 , R^5 are independently chosen from H, CH_3 , and halogen, then only one of R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 represents H; (ii) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , and R^{20} each represent H; and R^6 , R^8 , R^9 are independently chosen from H, CH_3 , and halogen, then only one of R^6 , R^8 , and R^9 represents H; (iii) at least two of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent C and at least one of W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 represent N; and (iv) when $R^1 = OH$; $R^7 = amidine$; and R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , and R^9 , represent H, R^{20} cannot be CH_3 .

A further preferred embodiment provides a compound of Formula I wherein,

25 A represents

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
or
 R^8
 R^9
 R^9

R1 represents OH, O-Ph, COOH, or P(O)(OH),;

R' represents H, Br, CONH2, CN, C(=NH)-NH-NH2, NH-C(=NH)-

5 NH, or C(=NH)-NH,;

X and Y independently at each occurance are selected from NH, N, C, or CH, such that at least one of X and Y always represents N or NH; and

Z represents C or N;

provided that, (i) when Z represents N, R^7 represents H or C(=NH)NH,.

15 Another further preferred embodiment is one wherein A represents

B represents

20

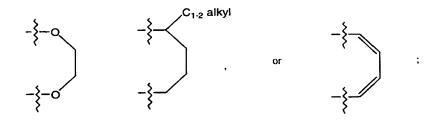
$$R^5$$
 R^4
 R^3
 R^2

X and Y represent N; and

R' represents-CONH,, or C(=NH)-NH,.

25 Another preferred embodiment provides a compound of Formula I wherein

 R^1 represents OH, -COOH, and O-P(O)(OH)₂;



15

R⁴ represents halogen, H, NO₂, C_{1-2} -alkyl, CH=CH-COOCH₃, NHSO₂C₁₋₂ alkyl, NHCO-het, $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -COOR¹⁰, $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -CONH- $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -pyridyl, or $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -CONH- $(CH_2)_{1-3}$ -dichlorophenyl;

R⁵ represents H;

20 R⁶ represents H;

R' represents C(=NH)-NH, or NH(=NH)NH;

R⁸ represents H, halogen, OR¹⁰, CF₃, or C(=NH)-NH₂;

R' represents H or halogen; and

R²⁰ represents H.

Yet another preferred embodiment is one wherein A represents

B represents

$$R^5$$
 R^4
 R^3
 R^1
 R^2

5

X and Y represent N.

A particularly preferred embodiment provides a compound of Formula I wherein: R^1 represents OH, or COOH;

10 R² represents H, halogen, OH, phenyl, $O-(CH_2)_{1-3}-Ph$, imidazolyl, 5-amidino benzimidazolyl, $O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-C(O)-NH-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, or $O-CH_2-C(O)-NH-CH_2-Ph$; R³ represents H, $O-CH_2-COOH$, $O-CH_2-C(O)O-C_2H_5$, $O-CH_2-C(O)-NH-(CH_2)_{1-4}-aryl$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-4}-NH-C(O)-naphthyl$, $CONH_2$, $O-(CH_2)_{1-2}-C(O)N(R^{10})-(CH_2)_{1-3}-Ph-R^{13}R^{14}$, $O-CH_2-C(O)-N(R^{10})-CH_2-piperanyl$, $O-CH_2-C(O)-NH-CH_2-indoyl$, $(CH_2)_{0-4}-aryl$,

20

 R^4 represents H, $-CH_3$, halogen, $-OCH_3$, $-(CH_2)_{1-2}COOR^{10}$, -COOH, $-NO_2$, -OH, aryl,

R⁵ represents H;

R⁶ represents H;

10 R⁷ represents H, halogen, -C(O)-NH₂, -C(=NH)-NH₂;

 R^{s} represents H, Cl, F, OH or OCH,;

R' represents H;

 R^{13} and R^{14} independently at each occurance represents H, halogen, $-OC_{1-2}$ alkyl, -OH, $-CF_{3}$, or $-C_{1-4}$ alkyl; and

5 R¹⁵ represents H,

; and

5

 R^{20} represents H or -CH₂-Ph.

Provided in another aspect of the present invention is a compound of Formula I wherein A represents

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
 R^{9}

B represents

$$\mathbb{R}^5$$
 \mathbb{R}^4
 \mathbb{R}^3
 \mathbb{R}^3

X represents C; and

10 Y represents NH.

25

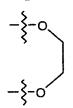
WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

A preferred embodiment of this aspect of the present invention provides compounds wherein

R¹ represents -OH, -COOH, or P(O)(OH);

 R^2 represents H, halogen, R^{10} , -aryl, heteroaryl, $-C_{1-2}$ -alkyl, COOH, $-OC_{1-2}$ -alkyl, $-O-(CH_2)_{0-2}$ -aryl, or $-C_{6-10}$ aryl- $-C_{1-4}$ -alkyl:

R³ represents H or -O-(CH₂)₁₋₃-COOH; alternatively R² and R³ taken together represent



10 R⁴ represents H, $-C_{1-4}$ alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOH$, $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-COOC_{1-2}-COOH$, halogen, $-(CH_2)_{1-2}-CONH_2$, $-CONH_2$, $-NO_2$, $-O-C_{1-2}$ alkyl, or -OH;

R⁵ represents H, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl, $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-C(O)-NH-(CH_2)_{1-3}-heteroaryl, <math>-(CH_2)_{1-4}-C(O)-NH-CH_3$, or -COOH;

15 R⁶ represents H, halogen, or -C₁₋₃ alkyl;

R' represents -C(0)-NH₂, -C(=NH)-NH-NH₂, or amidino;

R⁸ represents H, or halogen; and

 $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-CON(R^{10})_2$, or $-(CH_2)_{1-3}-COOH$.

Specifically preferred compounds of the present invention are selected from

3-[3-Bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-N-phenethyl-propionamide;

3-[4-(6-Carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-3-hydroxy-phenyl]-N-(2,3-dichloro-benzyl)-propionamide;

30 2-[4-(6-Carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]-N-(2,3-dichloro-benzyl)-acetamide;

3-[3-Bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-N-[2-(2,4-dichloro-phenyl)-ethyl]-propionamide;

PCT/US99/30302 WO 00/35886

```
3-[3-Bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-4-
hydroxy-phenyl]-N-(2-pyridin-2-yl-ethyl)-propionamide;
3-[3-Bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-4-
hydroxy-phenyl]-N-(3-phenyl-propyl)-propionamide;
```

- 2-[4-(6-Carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]-N -naphthalen-1-ylmethyl-acetamide; 2-(3'-Amino-5-chloro-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3Hbenzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 3-[3-Bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-4-
- hydroxy-phenyl]-propionic acid; 2-(3,5-Bis-hydroperoxy-2-hydroxy-pheny1)-3Hbenzoimidazole -5-carboxamidine; 2-[4-(5-Carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-3-hydroxy-
- phenoxy]-N-(3-chloro-benzyl)-acetamide; N-Benzyl-3-[3-bromo-5-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol 15 2-yl)-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-propionamide;
 - 2-(3,5-Dibromo-2,4-dihydroxy-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5carboxamidine;
 - 2-(2-Hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-
- carboxamidine; 20
 - 2-(5-Chloro-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5carboxamidine;
 - 2-(2-Hydroxy-3-phenethyloxy-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5carboxamidine;
- N-(3-Bromo-benzyl)-2-[4-(5-carbamimidoyl-1H-25 benzoimidazol-2-yl)-3-hydroxy-phenoxy]-acetamide; 2-{3-[1-(3-Amino-propionyl)-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy]-2hydroxy-phenyl}-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine; 2-(5-Chloro-2-hydroxy-3-pyridin-3-yl-phenyl)-1H-
- benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine; 30 2-[3-(5-Carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-2-hydroxyphenyl]-3,4,6,7-tetrahydro-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine-5carboxamidine;
 - 2-[3-(1-Aminoacetyl-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy)-2-hydroxy-
- phenyl]-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine; and 2-(2-Hydroxy-3-phenoxy-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5carboxamidine;

benzamide;

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

```
2-[2-Hydroxy-3-(1-methyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-phenyl]-
   1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
   2-[3-(1-Aminoacetyl-piperidin-3-ylmethoxy)-2-hydroxy-
   phenyl]-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
   2-{3-[1-(2-Amino-3-methyl-butyryl)-pyrrolidin-2-
   ylmethoxy]-2-hydroxy-phenyl}-1H-benzoimidazole-5-
   carboxamidine;
   2-[2-Hydroxy-3-(1-hydroxyacetyl-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy)-
   phenyl]-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
   2-(2-Hydroxy-5-iodo-3-methoxy-phenyl)-1H-benzoimidazole-
10
   5-carboxamidine;
   2-{3-[1-(2-Amino-3-methyl-butyryl)-pyrrolidin-2-
   ylmethoxy]-2-hydroxy-phenyl}-3H-benzoimidazole-5-
   carboxamidine;
   2-(2-Hydroxy-5-\{4-[1-(1-imino-ethyl)-piperidin-4-yloxy]-
15
   benzylamino}-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
   compound with methane;
   ylmethoxy]-benzylamino}-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-
   carboxamidine;
20
   2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-
    5-carboxamidine;
   3-[2,6-Dibromo-4-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-
   3-hydroxy-phenoxy]-propionic acid;
   3-[2,6-Dibromo-4-(6-carbamimidoyl-1H-benzoimidazol-2-yl)-
25
   3-hydroxy-phenoxy]-propionic acid ethyl ester; and
   2-[3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-(3-methoxy-but-3-enyl)-phenyl]-3H-
   benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine;
   3-Benzyl-2-(3-chloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-
   carboxamidine;
30
    3-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-
   hydroxy-phenyl]-propionic acid;
    [3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-
   hydroxy-phenyl]-acetic acid;
    6-Chloro-2-(3,5-dichloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-
    carboxamidine;
    3-Bromo-5-(5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-4-hydroxy-
```

```
2-(3,5-Dichloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
```

- 3-(4-Amino-benzyl)-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 5 2-(2-Hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-nitro-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(5-Hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 3-Benzyl-2-(2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 3-Benzyl-2-(3,5-difluoro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5carboxamidine;
 3-Benzyl-2-(3,5-dibromo-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-
 - 3-Benzyl-2-(3,5-dibromo-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 15 [3-Bromo-5-(5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-4-hydroxyphenyl]-acetic acid;
 - 3-Benzyl-2-(5-chloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-[3-Bromo-5-(5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-4-hydroxy-
- 20 phenyl]-acetamide;
 - 2-(3,5-Difluoro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(3,5-Dibromo-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 25 2-(2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(2-Hydroxy-5,4'-dimethyl-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-
- 30 carboxamidine;
 - 3-Benzyl-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 3-Benzyl-2-(3-chloro-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 35 3-Benzyl-2-(2-hydroxy-3,5-dimethyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 2-(3,5-Dibromo-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;

```
2-(2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-3-thiophen-2-yl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
```

- 2-[2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-3-yl]-acetamide;
- 5 [3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4hydroxy-phenyl]-acetic acid methyl ester;
 3-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4hydroxy-phenyl]-propionic acid methyl ester;
 - 3-(3-Amino-benzyl)-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-
- 10 1H-indole-5-carboxamidine; 2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(3-nitro-benzyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - 3-(3-Amino-benzyl)-2-(2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
- 3-Benzyl-2-(3-chloro-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1Hindole-5-carboxamidine;
 6-Chloro-2-{5-[2-(1,1-dioxo-1-thiomorpholin-4-yl)-2-oxoethyl]-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl}-1H-indole-5carboxamidine;
- 20 2-[5-(5-Carbamimidoyl-6-chloro-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxybiphenyl-3-yl]-N-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethyl)-acetamide;
 6-Chloro-2-{2-hydroxy-5-[2-(2-methoxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1yl)-2-oxo-ethyl]-biphenyl-3-yl}-1H-indole-5carboxamidine;
- 6-Chloro-2-{2-hydroxy-5-[2-oxo-3-(tetrahydro-furan-2-y1)propyl]-biphenyl-3-yl}-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 2-[5-(5-Carbamimidoyl-6-chloro-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxybiphenyl-3-yl]-N-(tetrahydro-furan-2-ylmethyl)-acetamide;
 2-[5-(5-Carbamimidoyl-6-chloro-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxy-
- biphenyl-3-yl]-N-(3-methoxy-propyl)-acetamide;
 Morpholine-4-carboxylic acid {2-[5-(5-carbamimidoyl-6-chloro-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yloxy]-ethyl}-amide;
 - Phosphoric acid mono-{2-[3-(3-benzy1-5-carbamimidoy1-1H-
- indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-ethyl} ester;
 2-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4hydroxy-phenyl]-N-{4-[1-(1-imino-ethyl)-piperidin-4yloxy]-phenyl}-acetamide;

4-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-butyric acid;

- 2-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-acetamide;
- 5 2-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-N,N-dimethyl-acetamide;
 - [3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-acetic acid;
 - 3-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-
- hydroxy-phenyl]-pentanedioic acid bis-[(2-morpholin-4-ylethyl)-amide];
 - 3-[3-(3-Benzyl-5-carbamimidoyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-propionamide; and
 - 2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitro-benzyl)-
- 15 1H-indole-5-carboxamidine;
 - or a stereoisomer or pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof.
 - or a stereoisomer or pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof.
- Yet another aspect of the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Formula I a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- The present invention also provides a method for treating or preventing a thromboembolic disorder; comprising administering to a patient in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30 SYNTHESIS

The novel compounds of the present invention can be prepared in a number of ways known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis. Described herein are some of the preferred synthetic methods for synthesizing novel compounds of the present invention. All temperatures reported herein are in degrees Celsius, unless indicated otherwise.

10

15

20

25

30

35

WO:00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

The novel compounds of Formula I can be prepared using the reactions and synthetic techniques described below. It should be noted that compounds of Formula I include compounds of Formula Ia. These compounds of Formula Ia represent some of the novel compounds of the present invention and can be further transformed to provide other novel compounds of the present invention.

The reactions are performed in a solvent appropriate to the reagents and materials employed and suitable for the transformations being effected. It will be understood by those skilled in the art of organic synthesis that the functionality present on the molecule should be consistent with the transformations proposed. This will sometimes require a judgment to modify the order of the synthetic steps or to select one particular process scheme over another in order to obtain a desired compound of the invention.

It will also be recognized that another major consideration in the planning of any synthetic route in this field is the judicious choice of the protecting group used for the protection of the reactive functional groups present in the compounds described in this invention. An authoritative account describing the many alternatives to the trained practitioner is Greene and Wuts (Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Wiley and Sons, 1991).

Proton NMR's ('H NMR) were obtained using deuterated solvents such as dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO-d,), deuterated chloroform (CDCl₃), or other appropriate solvents. Schemes I to XXXV illustrate synthesis of precursors useful in the synthesis of compounds of Formula I, or synthesis of compounds of Formula I, benzimidazole nucleus, i.e., wherein "A" represents benzimidazole, and Tables 2a and 2b list them. compounds of Formula I can be represented by the following structural formula:

10

15

20

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
 R^{20}
 R^5
 R^4
 R^4
 R^3

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 and R^{20} are as defined in the detailed description of the invention.

The aldehydes, represented by structures 3, 5, <u>8</u>, and **13** and the carboxylic acids represented by structures $\underline{44}$, $\underline{48}$, and $\underline{53}$ and $\underline{55}$ are useful intermediates in the synthesis of the novel compounds of Formulae I and Formula Ia. The aldehydes and carboxylic acids useful in the synthesis of compounds of Formula I either commercially available or can be prepared by the synthetic schemes outlined below.

Schemes I-IX illustrate the synthesis of aldehydes which can be used to synthesize compounds of Formula I.

Scheme I:

in which R^{1a} is H or R^1 , and R^2 , R^3 , and R^5 are as defined in the detailed description.

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

I is а representative example of the Scheme synthesis of aldehyde 3 using the Mitsunobu reaction. The general procedure comprises mixing an appropriately substituted benzaldehyde, 1, with a Boc protected piperidinol in the presence of triphenyl phosphine in an inert solvent, such as THF, at temperatures ranging from -25° to ambient temperature, preferably 0°. To the cooled mixture is added diethyl azido dicarboxylate (DEAD) in a drop wise manner (about 0.5 to 1 mL per minute). The resulting reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 2 to 24 hours after which time the reaction mixture is concentrated under reduced pressure to yield a residue of the desired aldehyde, 3. Purification of the desired aldehyde can be accomplished by using methods such as chromatography, recrystallization or other methods known to one skilled in the art.

Scheme II:

$$R^4$$
 R^2
 R^5
 R^{1a}
 R^{1a}

in which R1a is hydrogen or the same as R1.

Scheme II outlines the synthesis of aldehyde 5. The procedure involved forming a reaction mixture by combining an appropriate benzaldehyde 1, such as hydroxy benzaldehyde, ethyl bromoacetate, 4, potassium sodium iodide, an inert and in carbonate The reaction mixture is stirred at preferably acetone. ambient temperature for 12 to 24 hours after which time

the reaction mixture is filtered through celite, and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield an oily residue. This residue can be purified by column chromatography to yield the desired aldehyde, $\underline{\mathbf{5}}$.

5

Scheme III:

$$R_4$$
 R_2
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_4
 R_5
 R_4
 R_5
 R_4
 R_5
 R_6
 R_1
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_6
 R_8
 R_8

10

15

20

Scheme III represents a general procedure preparing aldehydes of formula 8. The procedure comprises mixing 4-hydroxy benzaldehyde 6, substituted thiazole 7, sodium carbonate, cesium carbonate, and sodium iodide in an inert solvent, such as acetone, to form a reaction mixture which is refluxed for eighteen The reaction mixture is cooled hours. to temperature, filtered through celite, and the filtrate evaporated to yield a residue. The residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed, in succession, with 2% aqueous sodium hydroxide, water, and brine solution. This washed organic layer is concentrated to yield the desired aldehyde 8.

25

Scheme IV:

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

$$R_4$$
 R_5
 R_1
 R_1
 R_2
 R_4
 R_5
 R_4
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_1
 R_2
 R_1
 R_2
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_1
 R_2
 R_3
 R_4
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_5
 R_7
 R_8

depicts a method of preparing aldehyde, Scheme IV 10. This method comprises reacting a N, Ndimethylformamide (DMF) solution of a hydroxy benzaldehyde, 11, with sodium hydride at about 0° followed by drop wise addition (about 1 mL per minute) of a DMF solution of dicyanonitrobenzene $\underline{\mathbf{9}}$. The resulting mixture is stirred from 12 to 24 hours followed by cautious pouring of the reaction mixture in ice water to yield a The product is collected by filtration, dried, product. and purified by recrystallization, e.g., from acetate, to yield aldehyde 10.

15 Scheme V

$$R_4$$
 R_5
 CHO
 R_4
 R_5
 CHO
 R_5
 R_6
 R_7
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_9
 R_9

15

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Scheme V depicts a method of preparing aldehyde 13. For example, an aldehyde of formula 11 wherein R3, R4. and R⁵ are hydrogen, i.e., 2,3-dihydroxybenzaldehyde (0.6g, 4.3 mmol) was added to dimethyl sulfonamide (DMSO) (10 ml) containing sodium hydride (0.25g, 10.4 mmol). After one hour a solution of benzyl bromide (0.52 ml, 4.3 mmol) in DMSO (5 ml) is added. Stirring the mixture continued for 24 h, after which time the mixture is poured into water and extracted with chloroform (2x). was acidified solution then aqueous hydrochloric acid to adjust the pH from 2 to about 4 and extracted with chloroform (3x). The latter organic layers were washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and filtered 3-benzyloxy-2-hydroxy over silica gel to give benzaldehyde.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 11.13 (s, 1H), 9.92 (s, 1H), 7.50-

6.85 (m, 8H), 5.20 (s, 2H).

20 Scheme VI

Scheme VI depicts a method for preparing aldehyde <u>15</u>. For example, a mixture of an aldehyde of formula <u>14</u> wherein R³ and R⁵ are hydrogen, i.e., 5-chloro,2-hydroxy benzaldehyde (0.10 g, 0.64 mmol) and N-iodosuccinimide (0.16 g, 0.71 mmol) in acetic acid (2 mL) was heated to 95° C for 2 h. Another portion of N-iodosuccinimide (0.020 g, 0.09 mmol) was added and heating was continued for 1 h. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate,

20

WO-00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

washed in succession with 5 % aqueous $Na_2S_2O_3$, saturated NaCl, and dried (Na_2SO_4) . The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and 5-chloro-3-iodo-benzaldehyde was obtained as a yellow crystalline solid (0.17 g, 94%)

Scheme VII

5

$$R_4$$
 R_5
 CHO
 DH
 R_6
 CHO
 DH
 R_6
 R_7
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_8
 R_9
 R_9

Scheme VII illustrates the synthesis of benzyl protected aldehydes <u>17</u>.

For example, sodium hydride (0.52g, 21.7 mmol) is added to DMSO (20 ml) followed by an aldehyde of formula 11 wherein R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are hydrogen, i.e., 2,3-dihydroxybenzaldehyde, (2.8g, 20.2 mmol). After stirring the solution for 1 h at ambient temperature, benzyl bromide 12 (2.4 ml, 20.2 mmol) was added forming a redbrown reaction mixture which was further stirred 12 h at ambient temperature. The solution was then partitioned between ethyl acetate (200 ml) and 0.5 N hydrochloric acid (300 ml). The organic layer was separated and

10

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

MgSO4, filtered and concentrated to afford a brown oil. The brown oil is purified by flash chromatography (15% ethyl acetate / hexane) to give 3.21 g of 2-benzyloxy-3-hydroxy-benzaldehyde <u>16</u>.

2-benzyloxy-3-hydroxy-benzaldehyde **16** (0.30g, mmol), triphenylphosphine (0.41g, 1.6 mmol) and 2-(2hydroxyethyl)pyridine (0.18 ml, 1.6 mmol) were stirred in THF (15 ml), followed by the addition of DEAD (0.25 ml, 1.6 mmol). After stirring for 12 h, the reaction mixture partitioned between ethyl acetate (200 ml) saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (200 ml). The organic layer is separated, dried (MgSO,), filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil. The brown oil is purified by flash chromatography (50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) to afford 0.29 g (66%) of 2-hydroxy-3-(2pyridin-2-ylethoxy)benzaldehyde 17 as a light yellow solid.

Scheme VIII

 R^3 R^2 R^3 R^3 R^2 R^3 R^3 R^2 R^3 R^3 R^3 R^2 R^3 R^3

Scheme VIII outlines the Heck coupling (R. F. Heck, "Palladium Catalyzed Reactions of Organic Halides with Olefins," Accounts Chem. Res. 12, 146 (1979)) used to prepare aldehydes 19. The bromo-benzaldehyde 18 is typically combined with the methyl acrylate (1.5 eq.), triphenyl phosphine (0.33 eq.), palladium acetate (0.15 eq.) and triethylamine (2 eq.) in benzene and the mixture refluxed for 12-18 h. After cooling the mixture is

15

diluted with 0.05N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic extracts are washed with water, then brine and dried (MgSO₄). Filtration followed by purification over silica gel affords the desired aldehyde 19.

Scheme IX

5

Scheme IX illustrates the preparation of aldehydes 21. For example, a compound of formula 20 wherein R3, R4 and R⁵ are hydrogen, i.e., 3-(3-hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid, (3.0 g, 0.018 mol, Aldrich Chemical Comp, 1279), NaOH (6 g, 0.15 mol), water (40 mL), and chloroform (40 ml) were combined and heated at 70°C for 12 h in a 100 ml round bottom flask. The solution is acidified to pH 4, extracted with EtOAc (2x30 mL), dried (MgSO,), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 3-(4-formyl-3-hydroxy phenyl)propionic acid which was used without further purification.

Scheme IXa

5

10

20

25

Compound 22 was prepared by combining terephthaldehyde monodiethylacetal (Acros Chemical Comp. Cat #24069-1000, 5.0 g, 0.02 mol), malononitrile (1.32 g, 0.02 mol), EtoH (30 mL), and NaOEt (2.72 g, 0.04 mol). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 12 h, water (50 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with Et₂O (2x 50 mL). The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 22 in a 88% yield (4.5 g, 0.017 mol).

15 HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ : 7.95 (d, 2H), 7.75 (s, 1 H), 7.65 (d, 2 H), 7.26 (d, 1 H), 5.51 (s, 1H), 3.6 (t, 2H), 1.21 (t, 3H).

MS (CI) Calc for $C_{15}H_{16}N_2O_2$: 256.12, Found: M+ 257.1.

In a 100 mL round bottom flask $\underline{22}$ (4.5 g, 0.017 mol) and EtOH (50 mL) were combined and the mixture cooled to 0° C. NaBH₄ (1 g) was added in increments and the mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 min. 1N HCl (50 mL) was added, the mixture was extracted with Et₂O (2x 50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 4.4 g, 99% of $\underline{23}$. HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ 10.05 (s, 1H), 7.96 (d, 2H), 7.58 (d, 2 H), 7.35 (s, 1 H), 3.45 (d, 1H).

In a 100 mL round bottom flask under an atmosphere of nitrogen was placed 50 mL of EtOH. Sodium (0.28 g,

15

20

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

0.012 mol) was added slowly and the mixture was stirred at 0° C for 30 minutes. Guanidine hydrochloride (1.16 g, 0.012 mol) was added, the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for an additional 30 minutes and $\underline{23}$ (2.0 g, 0.011) was added in one portion. The mixture was refluxed for 4 h, cooled to ambient temperature, and concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was triturated with Et_2O forming a precipitate. The precipitate was isolated and dried under vacuum for 12-18 h to give $\underline{24}$ in a 47% yield (1.2 g, 0.005 mol).

¹HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ : 9.98 (s, 1 H), 7.80 (d, 2 H), 7.37 (d, 2 H), 7.24 (s, 1 H), 7.18 (br s, 6 H).

The following Schemes X-XIII illustrate the synthesis of carboxylic acids which can be used to synthesize compounds of Formula I

Scheme X:

HO

$$R^5$$
 R^4
 R^4
 R^3
 R^4
 R^4

Scheme X shows a representative example of the synthesis of carboxylic acid $\underline{44}$.

15

20

25

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

For example, a mixture of a compound of formula 40wherein R^3 and R^4 are hydrogen and R^5 is chloro, i.e., 5chloro-2-hydroxy benzoic acid, (5.0 g, 29 mmol) and Niodosuccinimide (7.17 g, 32 mmol) in acetic acid (30 mL) was heated to 95° C for 2 h. Additional N-iodosuccinimide (0.70 g, 3.1 mmol) was added and heating was continued for 1 h. The mixture was cooled and poured over ice. The precipitate was isolated by filtration and the crude material was purified by recrystallization from methanol/water. The solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with water and dried. 5-Chloro-2-hydroxy-3-iodobenzoic acid $\underline{\textbf{41}}$ was obtained as a tan crystalline solid (6.14 g, 71 % yield).

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 12.0 (brs), 8.1 (s, 2H), 7.8 (s, 1H).

A solution of 5-Chloro-2-hydroxy-3-iodo-benzoic acid $\underline{41}$ in DMF (40 mL) was treated with K₂CO₃ (5.70 g, 41 mmol) and then stirred for 15 min. The mixture was chilled to 0°C under nitrogen and iodomethane (2.82 mL, 45 mmol) was added. This heterogeneous mixture was stirred for 18 h at 20°C. Additional K₂CO₃ (0.57 g, 4.1 mmol) and iodomethane (0.28 mL, 4.5 mmol) were added. After 6h, the mixture was diluted with ether, washed with saturated NaHCO₃, NaCl, and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure to give 5-Chloro-3-iodo-2-methoxybenzoic acid methyl ester $\underline{42}$ as a light purple crystalline solid (6.21 g, 93% yield).

 1 H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 3.75 (s, 3H).

To a solution of methyl,5-chloro-3-iodo-2-methoxybenzoic acid methyl ester (0.80 g, 2.5 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.085 g, 0.074 mmol) in toluene (12 mL) was added 3-nitrobenzene-boronic acid (0.45 g, 2.7 mmol) dissolved in 1 mL of ethanol.

Aqueous 2 N $\rm K_2CO_3$ (2.7 mL, 5.4 mmol) was added and the mixture was heated to reflux for 18 h. The mixture was diluted with ether, washed with 3:1 saturated NaHCO $_3$ /conc.

ammonium hydroxide, 0.1 M EDTA, saturated NaCl, and dried (Na_2SO_4) . The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography employing a gradient elution of 60 to 75 % $CH_2Cl_2/hexane$. 5-Chloro-2-methoxy-3'-nitro-biphenyl-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester <u>43</u> was obtained as an amber waxy solid (0.59 g, 75% yield).

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 8.4 (s, 1H), 8.3 (d, 1H), 8.1 (d, 1H), 7.7 (m, 3H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 3.4 (s, 3H).

5-Chloro-2-methoxy-3'-nitro-biphenyl-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester 43 (0.59 g, 1.8 mmol) is dissolved in (1.8 mL) and treated with a solution of methanolic KOH (1.8 mL, 3.7 mmol). After 16 h, solvent is removed under reduced pressure, followed by dilution with 5 mL of 1 M HCl and 10 mL of ice cold The resulting precipitate is isolated by filtration, rinsed with water and dried yielding 5-Chloro-2-methoxy-3'-nitro-biphenyl-3-carboxylic 44 as a tan powder (0.53 g, 95 % yield).

20 1 H-NMR (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 8.37 (s, 1H), 8.28 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.02 (d, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.75 (m, 3H), 3.45 (s, 3H).

25

5

10

15

30

Scheme XI:

5

10

15

20

Scheme XI shows a method incorporating a Mitsonobu reaction for the synthesis of carboxylic acid $\underline{48}$.

For example a compound of formula $\underline{46}$ wherein R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are hydrogen, i.e., 8-hydroxy-2,2-dimethylbenzo-[1,3]dioxin-4-one, was prepared by the procedure of Danishefsky, S. J.; and Dushin, R. G. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1992, 114, 655-659.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 7.82 (d, 1H), 7.20 (d, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 5.49 (s, 1H), 1.78 (s, 6H).

A solution of 8-hydroxy-2,2-dimethylbenzo- [1,3]dioxin-4-one $\underline{46}$ (1.34 g, 6.88 mmol) and 3-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid $\underline{\text{tert}}$ -butyl ester (1.27 g, 6.85 mmol) in THF (35 mL) under N₂ was cooled to 0°C. Triphenylphosphine (1.80g, 6.86 mmol) was added to the solution followed by addition of diethylazodicarboxylate (1.1 mL, 6.9 mmol) over 5 min. After 30 min, the reaction mixture was warmed to room

temperature and stirred for 6 h. Partial evaporation gave a concentrated crude material which was directly loaded onto a flash chromatography column (non-linear gradient 0-20-35% EtOAc in hexanes) to give 1.62 g (65%) of tert-butyl 2-(2,2-dimethyl-4-oxo-4,4-benzo[1,3]dioxin-8-yloxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate 47 as an oil.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- $d_{\rm s}$) δ : 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.12 (t, 1H), 5.02 (br s, 1H), 3.7-3.2 (br m), 2.09 (br m, 2H), 1.70 (s, 6H), 1.40 (d, 9H).

tert-buty1-2-(2,2-dimethy1-4-oxo-4,4benzo[1,3]dioxin-8-yloxymethyl) pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate 47 (1.65 g, 4.54 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (9.5 mL) and then 49% aqueous KOH (1.5 mL) was added to the solution to form a basic reaction mixture. This basic reaction mixture was heated at 60°C for 40 min. After cooling to room temperature and addition of 0.5 M aqueous KHSO, (100 mL) gave an acidic suspension. The suspension was extracted with ether (4 x 250 mL) and the combined extracts were washed with brine (2 x 50 mL) and dried Evaporation of the ether gave 1.26 g (93%) of (Na,SO,). 3-(1-tert-butoxycarbonyl pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy)-2hydroxy benzoic acid 48 as a brown solid.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ : 7.41 (d, 1H), 7.25 (d, 2H), 6.81 (t, 1H), 4.95 (br s, 1H), 3.6-3.2 (br m), 2.05 (br m, 2H), 1.40 (s, 9H).

30

10

15

20

10

20

25

Scheme XII:

$$R^5$$
 OMe R^5 OMe R^5 OPh R^4 OPh R^3 $\underline{50}$ OPh R^3 $\underline{51}$

Scheme XII illustrates a method for the synthesis of carboxylic acid 53.

For example a compound of formula <u>50</u> wherein R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are hydrogen, i.e., 1-methoxy-2-phenoxy benzene, was made according to the procedure in Organic Syntheses Collective Volume 3, p 566-568.

MS (chemical ionization) m/z calcd for [M + 1] 201.08, found 201.

15 ¹H NMR (300 MHz DMSO-d₆) δ : 7.30 (t, 2H), 7.21 (m, 2H), 7.00 (m, 3H), 6.78 (d, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H).

1-methoxy-2-phenoxy benzene $\underline{\bf 50}$ (0.99 g, 4.9 mmol) was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 under a N_2 atmosphere and cooled to 0° C. A 1.0 M solution of boron tribromide in CH_2Cl_2 (7.0 mL, 7.0 mmol) was added over 5 min. The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at 0° C for 1 h and then coevaporated with CH_3OH (4 x 30 mL) to give 0.95 g of 2-phenoxyphenyl $\underline{\bf 51}$.

MS (chemical ionization) m/z calcd for [M + 1] 187.07, found 187.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 7.40 (t, 2H), 7.35-6.95 (m, 5H), 6.90 (m, 2H).

15

20

25

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

2-Phenoxy phenyl $\underline{\bf 51}$ (0.95 g, 5.1 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine under a N₂ atmosphere. Diethyl carbamyl chloride (0.65 mL, 5.1 mmol) was added to solution over 5 min after which the solution is heated at reflux for 5 h. The pyridine is removed by rotary evaporation and the crude product dissolved in ether. The ether solution was washed with 0.5 M aqueous KHSO₄ followed by brine, and dried (Na₂SO₄) to give 0.60 g of crude 2-phenoxyphenyl diethyl carbonate $\underline{\bf 52}$. Flash chromatography (10% EtOAc in hexanes) further purified the product.

MS (chemical ionization) m/z calcd for [M + 1] 286.14, found 286.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d6) δ : 7.25 (m, 5H), 7.09 (m, 2H), 6.80 (m, 2H), 3.5-3.0 (m), 0.9 (p, 6H).

2-phenoxyphenyl diethyl carbonate $\underline{52}$ (0.264 g, 0.926 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF under a N₂ atmosphere using oven dried glassware. The solution was cooled to -78° C with a dry ice/acetone bath. A 1.7 M solution of tert-butyl lithium in pentane (0.62 mL, 1.0 mmol) was added over 4 min. After 40 min at -78° C, the atmosphere was changed to CO₂ using a balloon and kept at -78° C for 4 hr. The reaction vessel was warmed to 0° C followed by quenching with 10% aqueous NH₄Cl. The product was extracted with ether (3 x 50 mL), washed with brine (2 x 20 mL), and dried (Na₂SO₄). Rotary evaporation of ether gave 0.293 g of 2-diethyl carbamoyloxy-3-phenoxy benzoic acid $\underline{53}$.

MS (bioion) m/z calcd for [M + 1] 330.13, found 329.3. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d6) δ : 7.59 (m, 1H), 7.20 (m, 4H), 6.98 (t, 1H), 6.81 (d, 2H), 3.08 (m, 4H), 0.8 (p, 6H).

Scheme XIII :

$$R^5$$
OMe
 R^5
OMe
 R^5
 R^4
 CO_2H
 CO_2H
 CO_2H
 CO_2H

5

10

15

20

Scheme XIII illustrates the synthesis of a diacid used to make compounds of carboxylic acid $\underline{\bf 55}$.

For example to a 500 mL round bottom flask charged with 170mL of water and compound of formula 54, wherein i.e., 2-methoxy-1,3and R⁵ are hydrogen, dimethylbenzene, (5 g, 36.7 mmol) was added $KMnO_4$ (12.2 g, 77.2 mmol). The solution was heated to a gentle reflux using an oil bath until the purple color had disappeared (2 hour). Another batch of KMnO₂ (12.2 g, 77.2 mmol) was added and the heating was continued until the purple color was destroyed (2-2.5 hour). The reaction mixture was cooled slightly and the precipitated oxides of manganese were filtered through Celite. After washing the precipitates with warm water (2 \times 50 mL), the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to about 1/3 its original volume. This concentrated filtrate was 2.5 and the resulting fine white acidified to pH precipitate was filtered and dried overnight under reduced pressure on a high vacuum pump, yielding methoxy isophthalic acid 55 as a white powder (6.8 g, 94%

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (300 MHz, DMSO- d_{6}) δ : 7.97 (d, 2H), 6.9 (t, 1H), 2.5 (s, 3H).

The following schemes (XX to XXI) generally can be used to prepare compounds of Formula I having a benzimidazole nucleus.

10

Scheme XX

$$R^7$$
 R^6
 NH_2
 R^6
 NH_2
 R^6
 R^5
 R^4
 R^4
 R^6
 R^6

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
 R^5
 R^4
 R^4
 R^5
 R^4
 R^5
 R^4

Formula Ia

Scheme XX outlines general procedures (Method A) for the synthesis of compounds of Formula Ia. Scheme XX diaminobenzamidine refluxing a mixture of requires monohydrochloride with an aldehyde in the presence of an benzoquinone, sodium (e.g., oxidizing agent metabisulfite, and the like) in ethanol for about 12 The mixture is then cooled to room temperature hours. This results and poured into acetonitrile. generation of the desired product of Formula Ia which is further washed with fresh acetonitrile and dried.

15

10

15

20

Scheme XXI

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 NH_2
 R^9
 NH_2
 R^4
 R^4
 R^3
 R^3
 R^3

$$R^{8}$$
 R^{9}
 R^{1}
 R^{2}

Formula I

The above Scheme XXI (Method B) can also be used to make compounds of Formula Ia. An appropriate carboxylic acid, is heated at 180°C with the hydrochloride salt of diamino benzene derivative in poly phosphoric acid (PPA) under a nitrogen atmosphere (until the carboxylic acid had reacted completely). This reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and diluted with water (or dilute HCl) to yield a suspension. The suspension is isolated, and washed with cold water and dried to yield a compound of Formula Ia in the above scheme.

If Scheme XX or XXI utilizes appropriately protected acids or aldehydes, the final products depicted in Table 2 were realized by standard deprotection techniques known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis (See Greene, 'Protecting groups in Organic Synthesis'). Thus, for example, BOC groups were removed using HCl or TFA. In the case of an aldehyde, which has a benzyl protecting

15

20

group at R^2 , after the Method A reaction of this aldehyde with 3,4-diaminobenzamidine, the crude dark purple solid is isolated and then subjected to hydrogenation conditions in ethanol with Pd (10% on activated carbon). After 2 h, the Pd is filtered and the filtrate is

concentrated to ~20 ml and added to ether with vigorous stirring. After filtering and drying the product is isolated, represented by Example 172 in Table 2.

A variation of the above scheme XXI is used to make Examples 100 and 200 shown below:

The procedure is the same as Scheme XXI, except that 4-guanidino,1,2-diaminobenzene is used instead of 3,4-diaminobenzamidine.

Example 200 uses the acid from Scheme XIII which is reacted with 3,4,-diaminopyridine in the presence of polyphosphoric acid (Method B, Scheme XXI). The resultant compound is then reduced and appropriately substituted to yield Example 200.

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Table 2 lists examples of compounds of Formula I (and Ia) prepared by the above synthetic schemes XX and XXI, methods A and B respectively.

Compounds of Formula I wherein R^7 is an amidino group $(C(=NH)\,NH_2)$ can also be prepared by treating compounds of Formula I wherein R^7 = CN with NH_2OH followed by Zn in acetic acid.

Table 2: Lists some of the benzimidazole compounds represented by Formula I.

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
 R^{20}
 R^5
 R^4
 R^3
 R^2

wherein R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and R^{20} represent hydrogen; and R^7 represents amidino (or guanidino in the case of Example 100).

	-1	1 _2		7	
Ex.	R ¹	R ²	R,	R ⁴	R⁵
No.					i
100	OH	Ph	H	Н	Н
101	OH	I	Н	Cl	Н
102	OH	CO,H	H	Н	Н
103	OH	OCH,Ph	Н	Н	Н
104	OH	OCH,CO,H	Н	Н	Н
105	OH	ОН	Н	Н	Н
106	OH	F	Н	Н	Н
107	OH	OEt	H	Н	Н
108	OH	I I	Н	I	Н
109	OH	Cl	Н	Cl	Н
110	OH	Ph	Н	Н	Н
111	OH	Ph	Н	Cl	Н
112	OH	3-y1-	Н	Cl	H
		pyridyl	Ì		
113	OH	o-tolyl	Н	Cl	Н
114	OH	p-tolyl	Н	Cl	Н
115	ОН	H	Н	Cl	Н
116	OH	OPh	Н	Н	Н
117	ОН	Pyrrolidin- 2-ylmethoxy	H	Н -	H
118	OH	2-amino ethoxy	Н	Н	Н

	T _1	1 -2	1 = 3	T	
Ex. No.	R¹	R²	R³	R ⁴	R⁵
119	ОН	1-H- Imidazo[4,5 -c]pyridin- 2-yl	Н	Н	Н
120	ОН	4-1H- Benzoimidaz ol-2-yl	Н	H	Н
121	ОН	1-Methyl- 1H- benzoimidaz ol-2-yl	Н	Н	Н
122	ОН	Benzothiazo 1-2-yl	Н	Н	Н
123	OH	4-Hydroxy- 1H- benzoimidaz ol-2-yl 1H-	Н	Н	Н
124	ОН	Imidazo[4,5 -c]pyridin- 2-yl	Н	Н	Н
125	ОН	5-Fluoro- 1H- benzoimidaz ol-2-yl 5-	Н	Н	Н
126	ОН	5- Carbamimido yl-1H- benzoimidaz ol-2-yl	Н	Н	Н
127	ОН	5-Methyl- 1H- benzoimidaz ol-2-yl	Н	Н	Н
128	ОН	Н	Н	CH=C HCO ₂ M e	Н
129	ОН	Н	Me	Н	Н
130	ОН	2-Pyridin- 2-yl-ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
131	ОН	Н	Н	nitr o	Н
132	OH	Н	OCH ₂ C O,Et	Н	Н
133	ОН	m- nitrophenyl	H	Cl	Н

	1 - 1	3			,
Ex.	R¹	R ²	R³	R*	R ⁵
No.					
134	OH	-CH,CH,CH,CH (CH,) -		H	H
135	OPO,H	-CH,CH,CH,CH (H	H
136	OPO,H	-CH,CH,CH,CH (H	H
137	OH	Br	H	Me	H
138	OH	I	Н	Me	H
139	OH	Pyrrolidin-	H	H	Н
140		3-yloxy	 		
140	ОН	Pyrrolidin-	H	Н	H
1.41		2-ylmethoxy	<u> </u>		
141	OH	H	OH	H	H
142	OH	H	3-	H	H
	•		tert-		
			Butox		1
			ycarb		ĺ
	·		onyla mino-		
			propo		
143	OH	Н	4-	Н	77
1 1 2 2		11	oxy-	п п	H
			piper		
ł			idine		1
			-1-		
			carbo		
			xylic		
Į i			acid		
]			tert-		
			butyl		
			ester		
144	OH	Н	2-	H	Н
		•	Benzyl oxycar		
			bonyla		
]		•	mino-		
145	077		ethoxy		-
145 146	OH	H	H	OMe	H
	OH	OH	OH	H	H
147	OH	OCH,	H	I	H
148	OH	NO,	Н	NO,	H
150	ОН	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ -COOH	H	H
151	OH	OMe	H	H	Н
152	OH	OMe	H	NO,	Н
153	OH	OMe	OMe	Н	Me

	7 71	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁵
Ex.	R¹	R	R	R	R
No. 154	ОН	Н	Н	OCF,	H
155	OH	H	OH	H H	OH
156	OH	H	H	ОН	Н
157	OH	H	CH,CO	H	H
	On		О́Н		n
158	OH	H	OH	OH	H
159	OP(O)(OH),	Me	H	H	H
160	ОН	Piperidin- 3-ylmethoxy	Н	Н	Н
161	ОН	Piperidin- 3-ylethoxy	Н	Н	Н
162	ОН	2-(3,5- Dichloro- phenyl)- ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
163	ОН	4-Methoxy- benzyloxy	Н	Н	Н
164	ОН	2-Cyclohexyl-	Н	Н	Н
165	ОН	ethoxy 2-(4- Methoxy- phenyl)- ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
166	OH	2-(3-Chloro- phenyl)-ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
167	OH	2-(4-Chloro- phenyl)-ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
168	OH	2-(4-Fluoro- phenyl)-ethoxy	H	Н	H
169	ОН	3-Nitro- benzyloxy	H	Н	H
170	ОН	H	Н	H	OH
171	ОН	4-Fluoro- benzyloxy	Н	Н	Н
172	ОН	2-(1,3- Dioxo-1,3- dihydro- isoindol-2- yl)-ethoxy	Н	Н	Н
173	ОН	phenethyloxy	Н	Н	H
174	ОН	Br	Н	CH,COOH	Н
175	OH	Cl	Н	Сн₂СООН	H

					
Ex. No.	R¹	R²	R³	R4	R ⁵
176²	ОН	Cl	H	СН,СООСН,	Н
177²	OH	C1	Н	CH,COOH	Н
178	OH	3-nitrophenyl	Н	CH,CH,COOCH,	H
179	OH	3-nitrophenyl	Н	CH,CH,COOH	H
180	OH	C1	Н	СН,СООН	H H
1811	ОН	3-	H	CH,CH,COOH	H H
		acetylaminophe nyl			
182	ОН	3-chloro-4- fluorophenyl	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	H
183	OH	2-thienyl	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	Н
184	Br	Br	Н	2-tert- butoxycarbon ylamino-2- carboxy- ethyl	Н
185	ОН	Br	Н	2-amino-2- carboxy- ethyl	Н
186	ОН	phenyl	Н	2- carboxyethyl	Н
187	ОН	Br	н	2-tert- Butoxycarbo nylamino-3- oxo-5- phenyl- pentyl	H
188	ОН	Br	Н	2-Amino-2- phenethylca rbamoyl- ethyl	H
1893	OH	Br	Н	CH,CH,COOH	Н
190	OH	Cl	Н	CH,CH,COOH	Н
191²	ОН	Cl	Н	CH,CH,COOH	Н
192¹	ОН	Cl	Н	СН,СООСН	Н
193	OH ·	5-[2-(1,3- dioxo-1,3- dihydro- isoindol-2- yl)-1-imino- ethyl]- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydro-3H- imidazo[4,5- c]pyridin-2-yl	Н	Н	н
194	OH	4- dimethylamino- phenyl)-ethoxy	Н	H	Н
195	OH	OCH,	Н	Н	(CH ₂), -NH,
196	OH	3-methoxy- pheny-1-yl	Н	methyl	H
197	OH	phenyl	Н	methyl	н
198	ОН	1,4-Dihydro- benzo[d][1,2]d ioxin-6-yl	H	methyl	Н

	1				
Ex. No.	R¹	R²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁵
199	OH	4-methoxy- pheny-1-yl	Н	methyl	Н
200	OH	2-methoxy- phen-1-yl	Н	methyl	H
201	OH	NO ₂	Н	Н	Н
202	OH	0-cyclopentyl	Н	Н	Н
203	OH	O-CH ₂ -Ch (CH ₃) ₂	Н	H	Н
204	OH	Br	Н	H	Н
205	OH				
	1				
206	OH	0-ethyl	Н	Br	Н
207	OH	Br	Н	CH,COOH	Н
208	ОН	3-acetylamino- phen-1-yl	Н	Cl	Н
209	OH	NH-CO-ethyl	H	Н	Н
210	ОН	2-oxo- pyrrolidin-1- yl.	Н	Н	Н
211	ОН	3-(2-Amino- acetylamino)- phen-1-yl	Н	C1	Н
212	OH	3-(3-amino- propionylamino) -phen-1-yl	Н	C1	Н
213	OH	C1	Н	CH,COOH	Н
214	ОН	Br		3-{2- [(benzo[1,3] dioxol-5- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl]- ethyl}-phen- 1-yl	Н
215	ОН	Br	Н	3-[2-(2- Morpholin-4- yl- ethylcarbamo yl)-ethyl]- phen-1-yl	Н
216	ОН	Br	Н	3-{2- [(Pyridin-3- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl]- ethyl}-phen- 1-yl	н
217	OH	Br	H	CH,CO-NH- CH,-Ph	Н
218	ОН	Br	Н	CH ₂ CO-NH- CH ₂ -CH ₂ -Ph	Н

 $^{^{1}}$ R 7 represents C(=0)NH, and R 8 represents F 2 R 8 represents Cl

Listed below is the proton NMR (¹H NMR) and Mass spectral data for compounds listed in Table 2.

5 Ex.100

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.92 (s, 1H), 8.14 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.72 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.65-7.60 (m, 2H), 7.56 (s, 1H), 7.48-7.32 (m, 7H), 7.22-7.08 (m, 2H).

MS (ES) calc. 343.1, found 343.9

10

Ex. 101

 1 H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.09 (s, 2H), 8.38 (s, 1H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 7.98 (s, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz).

15 MS (ESI, M +1): Calc. 412.0; Found 412.8.

Ex.: 102

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.35 (s, 2H), 8.95 (s, 2H), 8.40 (d, 20 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H), 7.99 (t, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H) 7.68 (d, 1H), 7.24 (d, 1H, J = 7.4 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 5.22 (s, 2H).

MS(ESI, M+1): 296.3 (calc.); 297.0 (obs.).

25

Ex.: 103

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.42 (br.s, 2H), 9.09 (br.s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.80-7.75 (m, 2H0, 7.49 (d, 2H, J = 7.1 Hz), 7.42-7.33 (m, 3H), 7.24 (d, 30 1H, J = 7.4 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 5.22 (s, 2H). MS: 358.14 (calc.); 358.8 (obs.).

Ex. 105

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.35 (s, 2H), 9.00 (s, 2H), 8.19 35 (s, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 7.59 (d, 1H), 6.95 (d, 1H), 6.85 (t, 1H).

MS (CI, M^++1): Calc. 268.1; Found: 268.7.

EX. 107

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.27 (br.s, 2H), 8.96 (br.s, 2H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.81 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.68 (d, 1H, J = 10.5 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1H, J = 9.3 Hz), 7.09 (d, 1H), 6.94 (1H, t, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.06 (q, 2H, 6.9 Hz), 1.33 (t, 3H, J = 6.9 Hz).

MS: 296.13 (calc.); 296.9 (obs.).

Ex. 108

10 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.34 (br.s, 2H), 9.17 (br.s, 2H), 8.45 (s, 1H), 8.15 (m, 2H), 7.86 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.73 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz).

MS: 503.89 (calc.); 504.5 (obs.).

Ex. 110: 2-(2-Hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.08 (s, 2H), 8.28-8.13 (m, 2H), 7.85 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 20 8.3 Hz), 7.65-7.56 (m, 2H), 7.52-7.31 (m, 4H), 7.13 (t, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz).

MS (ESI, M⁺ + 1): Calc. 328.1; Found 328.9.

Ex. 111: 2-(5-Chloro-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

 1 H-NMR (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 9.39 (br s, 2H), 9.05 (br s, 2H), 8.33 (s, 1H), 8.23 (br s, 1H), 7.90-7.30 (m, 8H). MS (ES(, M+1): Calc. 362.1, Found: 362.9.

30

25

Ex.: 112

MS (Bioion): Calc. 363.09; Found 364.0.

Ex. 113

35 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.36 (s, 1H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H, J = 8.12 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.75-7.15 (m, 5H), 2.15 (s, 3H).

MS (ESI, M+1) Calc. 376.1, Found 377.0.

Ex. 114

5 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ : 14.25 (br s, 1H), 13.70 (br s, 1H), 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.30 (br s, 2H), 7.90-7.70 (m, 2H), 7.55-7.45 (m, 3H), 7.26 (d, 2H, J = 7.9 Hz), 2.35 (s, 3H).

MS (ES) calc. 376.1, found 377.0.

10

20

Ex. 115

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.46 (s, 2H), 9.16 (s, 2H), 8.36 (d, 1H, J = 2.4 Hz), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.92 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.78 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.51 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.20 (d, 1H, 8.9 Hz).

MS (CI) calc. 286.7, found 287.2.

Ex. 116: 2-(2-Hydroxy-3-phenoxy-pheny1)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.40 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.07 (d, 1H, J = 10.5 Hz), 7.86 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.33 (t, 2H, J = 9 Hz), 7.23 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.1-7.03 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, 2H, J = 7.5

25 Hz).

Mass ESI (M+1) : 344.13 (calc.); 346.2 (obs.)

Ex. 117

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.98 (s, 2H), 9.22 (s, 2H), 8.27 (s, 30 1H), 7.92 (t, 2H, J= 6 Hz), 7.82 (d, 1H, J= 12 Hz), 7.29 (d, 1H, J= 9 Hz), 7.05 (t, 1H, J= 9 Hz), 4.38 (d, J= 12 Hz), 4.26 (t, J= 12 Hz), 4.1-3.4 (br.m), 3.4-3.1 (br.m), 2.25-1.60 (br.m, 5H).

MS (ESI): Calc.: 351.17; Obs.: 351.19.

Ex.: 118

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.49 (s, 2H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 8.39 (s, 2H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.96-7.89 (m, 2H), 7.79 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.04 (t, 1H, J = 15 Hz), 4.25 (t, 2H), 4.0-3.0 (br.m).

MS: 311.14 (calc.); 311.19 (obs.).

Ex.119: 2-[3-(1H-benzoimidazol-2-y1)-2-hydroxy-phenyl]1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine:

¹H NMR (d₆- DMSO) δ: 9.55 (s, 2H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.7 (d, 1H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.3 (s, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H), 7.95 (t, 1H), 7.85 (t, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.58 (d, 1H), 7.55 (d, 1H), 7.4 (t, 1H).

Mass ESI (M*+1): Calculated: 368.14; Obs.: 369.0.

Ex.: 120

- ¹H NMR (d_6 DMSO) δ 9.5 (s, 2H), 9.45 (s, 1H), 9.1 (d, 2H), 8.6 (d, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.3 (s, 1H), 8.2 (d, 1H), 7.9 (d, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.4 (t, 1H). MS: 369.13 (calc.); 370.0 (obs).
- 30 Mass ESI (M*+1): Calculated: 382.15; Obs.: 383.0.

Ex. 122

¹H NMR (d_6 - DMSO) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.22 (s, 2H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.45 (d, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H), 8.19 (d, 1H), 8.09 (d,

35 1H), 7.93 (d, 1H), 7.79 (d, 1H), 7.6 (t, 1H), 7.55 (t, 1H), 7.45 (t, 1H).

MS: 385.10 (calc.); 385.9 (obs.).

Ex.: 123

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.4 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.2 (d, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H), 7.78 (d, 1H), 7.38 (t, 1H), 7.20 (t, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H), 6.75 (d, 1H).

5 MS (Bioion): Calc.: 384.4; Obs.: 384.

Ex. 124

¹H NMR (d_6 -DMSO) δ: 9.4 (s. 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.52 (d, 1H), 8.49 (d, 1H), 8.4 (d, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.95 (d, 1H), 7.75 (d, 1H), 7.50 (t, 1H), 7.3 (t, 1H).

MS: 369.13 (calc.); 370 (obs.).

Ex.: 125

15 MS: 386.13 (calc.); 387.0 (obs.).

Ex.: 126

¹H NMR (d_6 - DMSO) δ : 9.5 (s, 4H), 9.2 (s, 4H), 8.57 (d, 2H), 8.3 (s, 2H), 7.95 (d, 2H), 7.29 (d, 2H), 7.4 (t, 1H), 7.29 (d, 2H).

MS: 410.16 (calc.); 411.0 (obs.).

Ex.: 127

MS: 382.15 (calc.); 383.0 (obs.).

25

20

Ex. 129

MS: 266.12 (calc.); 266.8 (obs.).

30 EX. 130

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.50 (br.s, 2H), 9.22 (br.s, 2H), 8.87 (d, 1H, J = 5.8 Hz), 8.58 (d, 1H, J = 7.9 Hz), 8.24 (s, 1H), 8.16 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.99-7.86 (m, 3H), 7.78 (d, 1H, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.51 (t, 2H, J = 5.8 Hz), 3.61 (t, 2H, J = 5.8 H).

35 2H, J = 5.8 H). MS: 373.15 (calc.); 374.0 (obs.).

Ex. 131

¹H NMR (DSMO-d₆), 300 MHz) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.20 (s, 2H), 9.16 (d, 1H, J=2.69 Hz), 8.22 (m, 2H), 7.86 (d, 1H, J=8.52 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, J=8.52 Hz), 7.27 (d, 1H, J=9.17)

5 Hz) MS: 298.3 (M¹)

Ex. 132

'HMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.44 (br. s, 2H), 9.06 (br. s, 2H), 8.18 (br. s, 2H), 7.86 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, J=8.5 Hz), 6.68-6.74 (m, 2H), 4.89 (s, 2H), 4.18 (Q, 2H, J=7.1Hz), 1.22 (t, 3H, J=7.1Hz) MS: Calc.: 354.13;:354.9 (obs.)

15 **Ex. 133**

¹H NMR (d_6 -DMSO) δ : 9.42 (br s, 2H), 9.08 (br s, 2H), 8.53 (s, 1H), 8.44 (d, 1H), 8.30-8.05 (m, 3H), 7.95-7.75 (m, 4H).

MS: 407.1 (calc.); 407.9 (obs.).

20

25

35

Ex. 135

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 9.47 (s, 2H), 9.13 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.93 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, 1H, J = 8.9 Hz), 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 8.9 Hz), 3.30-3.05 (m, 2H), 2.78 (m, 1H), 1.78 (m, 4H), 1.23 (d, 3H, J = 7.5 Hz). MS (CI, M+1): 434.1 (calc.); 435.4 (obs.).

Ex.: 136

30 ¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ ppm: 9.40 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.85 (s, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 7.70 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 3.18-3.05 (m, 1H), 2.92-2.70 (m, 2H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 1.79-1.20 (m, 5H), 1.00 (t, 3H, J = 7.9 Hz).

MS (CI, M+1): 448.1 (calc.); 449.5 (obs.).

Ex. 137

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.38 (s, 2H), 9.0 (s, 2H), 8.2 (br. s, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H), 7.86 (br. s, 1H), 7.72 (d, 1h, J=7.78 Hz), 7.60 (s, 1H), 2.35 (s, 3H).

5 MS: 345.1 (obs.).

Ex. 138

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.4 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.2 (br. s, 1H), 8.03 (br. s, 1H), 7.85 (br. s, 1H), 7.8-7.65 (m, 2H), 2.3 (s, 3H).

MS: 392.0 (calc.) 392.8 (obs.)

Ex. 139

20

25

10

Ex. 140

1H-NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ ppm: 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.20 (s, 2H), 8.90 (d, 1H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.12 (t, 1H), 7.90 (t, 2H), 7.79 (d, 1H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 7.05 (t, 1H), 4.40 (d, 1H), 4.21 (t, 1H), 4.05-3.50 (m), 3.40-3.20 (m, 2H), 3.05 (q, 1H), 2.25-1.75 (m, 5H).

MS (ESI): 351.17 (calc.), 352.0 (obs.)

Ex. 144

30 ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.51 (s, 2H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 8.22 (br.m, 2H), 7.91 (d, 1H, J=8.44 Hz), 7.80 (d, 1H, J=8.44 Hz), 7.59 (br.t, 1H), 7.36 (br.s, 5H), 6.70 (br. m, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.08 (s, 2H), 3.3-3.7 (br.m). MS: 446.5 (M+1)

Ex. 145

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.49 (s, 2H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.97-7.90 (m, 2H), 7.79 (d, 1H), 7.12 (s, 2H). MS (ES) calc. 282.1, found 282.9.

5

Ex. 146

Mass, ESI: (M^++1) : 284.3 (calc.); 284.9 (obs.).

Ex. 147

10 Mass, ESI: (M+1): 408.2 (calc.); 408.8 (obs.).

Ex. 148

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.25 (s, 2H), 9.10 (s, 1H), 8.70 (s, 2H), 9.63 (s, 1H), 8.10 (s, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H), 7.60 (d, 1H).

Mass, ESI: $(M^{+}+1)$: 342.3 (calc.); 342.9 (obs.).

Ex. 149

Mass, ESI: $(M^{+}+1)$: 347.4 (calc.); 348.0 (obs.).

20

30

15

Ex. 150

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 9.54 (s, 2 H), 9.27 (s, 2 H), 8.28 (s, 1 H), 8.26 (d, 1 H, J = 9.7 Hz), 8.00 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.89 (d, 1 H, J = 9 Hz), 7.11 (s, 1 H), 6.98 (d, 1 H, J = 9.6 Hz), 5.0-4.0 (br s, 1 H) 2.86 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.59 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz). Mass, MS (CI): 324.12 (calc.); 324.9. (obs.)

Ex. 151 2-(2-Hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

Mass, ESI: $(M^{+}+1)$: 282.3 (calc.); 282.9 (obs.).

Ex. 152 2-(2-Hydroxy-3-methoxy-5-nitrophenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

35 Mass, ESI: (M^++1) : 327.3 (calc.); 327.9 (obs.).

Ex. 153 2-(3,4-Dimethoxy-2-hydroxy-6-methylphenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidin

Mass, ESI: $(M^{+}+1)$: 326.4 (calc.); 326.9 (obs.).

5 Ex. 154 2-(2-Hydroxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

Mass, ESI: (M^++1) : 336.3 (calc.); 336.9 (obs.).

Ex. 155 2-(2,4,6-Trihydroxyphenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

Mass, ESI: (M'+1): 284.3 (calc.); 284.8 (obs.).

Ex. 157

¹HNMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.48 (s, 2 H), 9.18 (s, 2 H), 8.24 (s, 1 H), 8.23 (d, 1 H, J = 10.0 Hz), 7.95 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.82 (d, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.10 (s, 1 H), 6.98 (d, 1 H, J = 9.6 Hz), 6.55 (s, 1 H), 5.0-4.0 (br s, 1 H, CO2H), 3.65 (s, 2 H

Mass, MS (CI) 310.11 (calc.); 310.9. (obs.)

20

10

Ex. 158 2-(2,4,5-Trihydroxyphenyl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

Mass, ESI: $(M^{+}H)$: 284.3 (calc.); 284.8 (obs.).

25

Ex.: 159

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.37 (s, 1H), 9.11 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H), 7.86 (d, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.81 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.71 (d, 1H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.46 (d, 1H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.24 (t, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.41 (s, 3H). MS (ESI, M+1): 346.1 (calc.); 346.9 (obs.).

Ex. 160

 1 H-NMR (DMSO-D₆) δ : ppm: 9.50 (s, 2H), 9.21 (s, 2H), 9.00 (t, 1H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.0-7.7 (m, 3H), 7.22 (d, 2H, J = 8 Hz), 7.02 (t, 1H, 8 Hz), 4.5-3.0 (br.m), 2.8 (m, 2H), 3.38 (br.s, 1H), 2.05-1.60 (m, 4H), 1.4 (m, 1H). MS (ESI): 365.19 (calc.); 365.9 (obs.)

25

35

5

Ex. 161

 1 H-NMR (DMSO- 1 G₆) 1 8 : ppm: 9.48 (s, 1H), 9.30-9.00 (m, 3H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.9 (m, 2H), 7.30 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.23 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.02 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 5.0-3.5 (br.m), 3.3 (br.m), 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.30-2.10 (m, 1H), 2.10-1.85 (m, 2H), 1.85-1.30 (m, 6H). MS (ESI): 379.20 (calc.); 379.8 (obs.)

10 Ex. 162

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.44 (s, 2H), 9.14 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.89-7.74 (m, 3H), 7.61 (d, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.40 (dd, 1H, J = 8.3, 2.2 Hz), 7.21 (d, 1H, 7.8 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.27 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.20 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 440.08; Found 441.0.

Ex. 163

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.42 (s, 2H), 9.10 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.77 (m, 2H), 7.42 (d, 2H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.24 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.96 (m, 3H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 3.74 (s, 3H).

MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 388.15; Found 389.0.

Ex. 164

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.44 (s, 2H), 9.14 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 30 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.76 (m, 2H), 7.17 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 4.07 (t, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz), 1.76-1.62 (m, 8H), 1.16 (m, 3H), 0.94 (m, 2H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 378.21; Found 379.1.

Ex. 165

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 7.89 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.81 (m, 2H), 7.28 (d, 2H, 40 J = 8.6 Hz), 7.20 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.99 (t, 1H, J =

8.0 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2H, J = 8.6 Hz), 4.22 (t, 2H, J = 6.9 Hz), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.03 (t, 2H, J = 6.9 Hz). MS (ESI, M^{+} +1): Calc. 402.17; Found 403.1.

5

Ex. 166

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.07 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.86 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.75 (m, 2H), 7.49 (s, 10 1H), 7.33 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.97 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.26 (t, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.10 (t, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz).

MS (ESI, M^{*} +1): Calc. 406.14; Found 407.0.

15

Ex. 167

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.04 (s, 2H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.74 (m, 2H), 7.38 (m, 20 4H), 7.18 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.96 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.24 (t, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz), 3.08 (t, 2H, J = 6.7 Hz). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 406.14; Found 407.0.

25

Ex. 168

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.36 (s, 2H), 9.00 (s, 2H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.83 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.40 (dd, 2H, J = 8.3, 5.9 Hz), 7.15 (m, 3H), 6.96 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.23 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.08 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz).

MS (ESI, M +1): Calc. 390.15; Found 391.0.

Ex. 169

35

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.07 (s, 2H), 8.40 (s, 1H), 8.22 (m, 2H), 7.98-7.69 (m, 5H), 7.27 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.03 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 5.38 (s, 2H). MS (ESI, M^+ +1): Calc. 403.13; Found 403.9.

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Ex. 170

¹H NMR (dMSO-d₆) δ : 9.42 (s, 2 H) 9.12 (s, 2 H) 8.25 (d, 1 H, J = 1.1) 7.95 (d, I H, J = 8.5) 7.76 (d, 1 H, J = 1.1) 7.27 (t, 1 H, J = 8.2) 6.63 (d, 2 H, J = 8.2).

5 MS (bioion) found: 269 Theoretical: 268.1

Ex. 171

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.42 (s, 2H), 9.09 (s, 2H), 8.21 (s, 10 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.77 (m, 2H), 7.53 (dd, 2H, J = 7.8, 5.7 Hz), 7.22 (m, 3H), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 5.18 (s, 2H).

MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 376.13; Found 376.9.

15 **Ex. 172**

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.53 (s, 2H), 9.25 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.93-7.80 (m, 7H), 7.28 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.35 (t, 2H, J = 5.7 Hz), 4.00 (t, 2H, J = 5.7 Hz).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 441.14; Found 442.3.

Ex. 173

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_{6}) δ : 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 2H), 7.87-7.72 (m, 3H), 7.38-7.16 (m, 6H), 6.97 (t, 1H, J = 9.3 Hz), 4.25 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.08 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 372.16; Found 373.0.

The following discussion illustrates transformation of compounds of Formula Ia, Table 2, into compounds of Formula I. Compounds of Formula I prepared by these schemes are included in Table 2a.

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are amino can be prepared by reducing a corresponding compound of Formula Ia in which R², R³, R⁴ or R⁵ nitro. The reduction can be accomplished in any number of ways known to one skilled in the art. For example, a representative way of reducing the nitro group is by

15

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

catalytic hydrogenation. The catalytic hydrogenation is carried out by mixing an appropriate nitro compound of Formula I with Pearlman's catalyst in a suitable solvent (e.g., methanol). Air from the reaction vessel is removed under reduced pressure and the reaction vessel is then charged with an atmosphere of hydrogen. The resulting mixture is stirred for about 18 hours, is filtered to remove the catalyst, and is concentrated to yield the desired amine.

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are $-NR^{10}R^{24}$ wherein R^{24} is other than hydrogen, can be prepared by reductive amination of a suitable aldehyde with a corresponding compound of Formula I in which R^2 , R^3 , R^4 or R^5 is amino. The reductive amination is carried out by stirring a mixture of the amine with the aldehyde and molecular sieves, in methanol under an atmosphere of nitrogen for about 2 hours. Sodium cyanoborohydride is then added to the reaction mixture and the resulting mixture is stirred at ambient temperature for about 15 hours. The reaction mixture is then filtered through celite and the filtrate is concentrated. The residue may be purified by chromatography.

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R2, R3, R4 and R⁵ comprise groups containing an annular nitrogen atom may be further derivatized to an corresponding \underline{N} -1-iminoethyl substituted derivative by reacting the compound with ethyl acetamidate. For example, a compound of Formula I R^4 which is 4-(1-(1-iminoethyl)piperindin-4yloxy)benzylamino can prepared by be reacting a corresponding compound of Formula I in which R4 is 4piperidin-4-yloxybenzyl amino with ethyl acetamidine hydrochloride and triethyl amine in ethanol and stirring over night under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture is concentrated under reduced pressure residue may be purified by column chromatography.

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are or contain a carboxy group can be prepared by hydrolyzing a corresponding compound of Formula Ia in

10

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

which R^2 , R^3 , R^4 or R^5 is or contains a -COOR¹⁰ group. For example, a compound of Formula I in which R^3 is carboxymethoxy can be prepared by hydrolyzing a compound of Formula I in which R^3 is ethoxy carbonyl methoxy.

Compounds of Formula Ia in which any of R², R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are or contain a carboxy group can be derivatized to a compound of Formula I in which R², R³, R⁴ or R⁵ is or contains -CONR¹¹R¹² or -C(O)NR³³R³⁴ by reacting the acid with an appropriate amine. For example a compound of Formula I in which R³ is carboxy methoxy is converted to a compound in which R³ is 2-(1,3-dihydro isobenzofuran-5-yl)ethylcarbomyl methoxy by reacting the acid with 2-(1,3-dihydro isobenzofuran-5-yl)ethyl amine in the presence of a suitable coupling agent (e.g., N,N'-carbonyl diimidazole (CDI), PyBOP, and the like)

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R2, R3, R4 and R^5 halo can be prepared by halogenating a corresponding compound of Formula I in which R2, R3, R4 and R⁵ is hydrogen. For example, a compound of Formula I in which R2 and R4 are bromo was prepared by reacting 4-(6-carbamimidoy1-1H-benzoimidzol-2-y1)-3-hydroxy acetic acid (Example 203, Table 2a) (100 mg, 0.307 mmol) with N-Bromosuccinimide (55mg, 0.307 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 mL). The reaction mixture is allowed to stir at room temperature for 1 hr forming a deep red-orange solution, which is added dropwise to a stirring solution of anhydrous ether and the resultant red precipitate is isolated and dried under vacuum to afford 115 mg (77.4 %) of a red solid. The crude material is dissolved in a 50:50 mixture of 1N HCl/MeOH (10 mL) and purified using reverse-phase C-18 HPLC (2-50% gradient) to yield 10 mg 2,6-dibromo-4-(6-carbamimidoyl- $1\underline{H}$ -benzoimidzol-2-yl)-3-hydroxy phenoxy acetic acid (Example 204, Table 2a) as a yellow solid.

Compounds of Formula I in which Q, Q^1 , Q^2 and/or Q^3 or L^1 , L^2 , L^3 and/or L^4 are N-R³⁷ can be prepared by reacting a corresponding compound of Formula I in which Q, Q^1 , Q^2 and/or Q^3 or L^1 , L^2 , L^3 and/or L^4 is NH with a suitable

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

protected amino acid. The reaction is typically carried out in the presence of a coupling agent (e.g., PyBOP, CDI, and the like). For example a compound of Formula I in which R^2 is 1-aminoacetyl pyrrolidin-3yloxy was prepared by coupling a PyBrOP peptide onto Example 139, Table 2 to give the product Example 208, Table 2a.

tert-Butoxycarbonyl amino acetic acid and 2-(2hydroxy-3-pyrrolidin-3-yloxyphenyl)-1H-benzoimidazole-5carboxamide Example 139 (Table 2), were suspended in DMF (1.0 mL) under a N, atmosphere. Diisopropylethylamine was added and the mixture was cooled in a water/ice bath at PyBrOP was quickly added to the cold suspension. The mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature to form a solution. The reaction was allowed 2 h and then the reaction mixture was added to EtOAc forming a precipitate. The precipitate was isolated and dissolved in 3M aqueous HCl using a vortex mixer. This solution was kept at rppm temperature for 25 minutes and then diluted and CH,CN. The mixture was filtered. with H,O Preparatory HPLC (linear gradient, 2-35% CH,CN in 0.01 M aqueous HCl) followed by lyophilization gave 28 mg a of Example 208, Table 2a.

Analytical HPLC, (1 = 214 nm), 99%.

Compounds of Formula I in which any of R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are or contain a NHSO₂R (R = alkyl, aryl, and the like) group can be prepared by sulfonating a corresponding compound of Formula I in which R^2 , R^3 , R^4 or R^5 are or contain an amino group. For example, a compound of Formula I wherein R^2 is methyl sulfonyl amino is prepared as follows.

A mixture of 2-(3'-Amino-5-chloro-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine 73 (0.070 g, 0.15 mmol) and THF/water (1:1, 0.5 mL) is chilled (0° C) and treated with 2 N NaOH (0.16 mL, 0.32 mmol) and methane sulfonyl chloride (0.013 mL, 0.16 mmol) in alternating portions. The mixture is kept at 0° C for 1 h and then treated with another portion of 2 N NaOH (0.016 mL, 0.032 mmol) and methane sulfonyl chloride

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

(0.001 mL, 0.013 mmol). After another 1 h, the solvents were reduced in volume under reduced pressure, and the crude material is purified by C18 reversed-phase HPLC (2-65 % MeCN/H₂O containing 20 mM HCl, over 50 min.). The appropriate fractions were pooled and the solvent is removed under reduced pressure. 2-(5-chloro-2-hydroxy-3'-methanesulfonylamino-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine 74 is obtained as a tan powder (0.012 g, 16 % yield) (Example 288, Table 2a):

Compounds of Formula I in which A is 4-(5-carbamimidoyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c] pyridin-2-yl can be prepared by hydrogenating a corresponding $1\underline{H}$ -imidazo[4,5-c] pyridinyl derivative to give a 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c] pyridinyl intermediate and then reacting the intermediate with $1\underline{H}$ -pyrazole-1-carboxamide. The hydrogenation is carried out under standard conditions. For example, the hydrogenation can be effected with a suitable catalyst (e.g., PtO,, etc.) in a suitable solvent (e.g., methanol).

The reaction with the amidine typically is carried out in the presence of base (e.g., Hunig's base, etc.) in a suitable solvent (e.g., anhydrous DMF) at 20° to 100°C and requires 12 to 24 h to complete. Compounds of Formula I can be prepared by proceeding as in Scheme XXI but substituting an appropriate diamino pyrrolidine derivative for the diamino benzene derivative.

PtO₂ (20 mg) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (5 mL) was added to a solution of 2-[2-Hydroxy-3-(1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl)-phenyl]-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine (Example 120, Table 2) (100 mg, 0.27 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL). The mixture was hydrogenated at 50 psi in a Parr apparatus for 12-18 h. After the hydrogenation was completed, the catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to dryness. HPLC purification (2-50% acetonitrile / 60 minutes) followed by lyophilization afforded 2-[2-Hydroxy-3-(4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl)-phenyl]-1H-benzoimidazole-5-

carboxamidine <u>75</u> as pale yellow powder (20 mg, 20% yield) (Example 296, Table 2a).

Hunig's base (0.042 mL, 0.24 mmol) was added to a 2-[2-Hydroxy-3-(4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-3Hof imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl)-phenyl]-1H-benzoimidazole-5-5 (19mg, 0.04 mmol) and 1H-pyrazole-1carboxamidine 75 carboxamidine hydrochloride (12 mg, 0.082 mmol) anhydrous DMF and the mixture was stirred for 12-18 h at 80 °C. The mixture was poured into water (15 mL) / diethyl ether (15 mL). The aqueous layer was washed with 10 diethyl ether $(3 \times 10 \text{ mL})$ and concentrated to dryness. HPLC purification (2-50% acetonitrile / 60 afforded 2-[3-(5-Carbamimidoy1-1H-benzoimidazo1-2-y1)-2hydroxy-phenyl]-3,4,6,7-tetrahydro-imidazo[4,5-

c]pyridine-5-carboxamidine <u>76</u> as a lyophilized yellow light powder (15.5 mg, 75% yield) (Example 298, Table 2a).

Ex.: 193

20

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.5 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.9-7.7 (m, 3H), 7.65 (bs, 2H), 7.55 (d, 2H), 7.2 (d, 1H), 7.0 (t, 1H), 4.3 (t, 2H), 3.15 (t, 2H), 3.05 (s, 6H).

25 MS (ESI) m/z = 415.8 (MH+, calc 415.2).

Ex.: 194

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.5 ppm, (s, 2H), 30 9.3 (s, 2H), 8.1 (s, 2H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 2.3 (s, 3H). MS (ESI) m/z = 362.6, 364.3 (MH+, calc 362.0).

35

Ex.: 195

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.5 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.3 (s, 1H), 8.1 (bs, 2H), 7.9 (d, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.2 (d, 1H), 6.9 (d, 1H), 3.9 (s, 3H), 2.6 (m, 4H), 1.7 (t, 2H).

5 MS (ESI) m/z = 339.9 (MH+, calc 339.17).

Ex.: 196

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.4 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.0 (s, 2H), 8.2 (bs, 1H), 8.0 (S, 1H), 7.9 (m, 1H), 7.7 (d, 1H),7.45-7.25 (m, 2H), 7.2 (d, 2H), 6.9 (d, 1H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 2.4 (s, 3H). MS (ESI) m/z = 372.9 (MH+, calc 372.2).

15 **Ex.: 197**

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.5 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.0 (s, 2H), 7.8-7.65 (bs, 1H), 7.6 (d, 2H), 7.4 (t, 2H), 7.35-7.25 (m, 2H), 2.35 (t, 3H).

20 MS (ESI) m/z = 360.9 (MH+, calc 360.1).

Ex.: 198

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.4 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.1 (s, 2H), 8.2 (bs, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H), 7.9 (d, 1H), 7.7 (d, 1H), 7.3 (s, 1H), 7.2 (s, 1H), 7.1 (d, 1H), 7.0 (d, 1H), 6.0 (s, 2H), 2.3 (s, 3H). MS (ESI) m/z = 386.9 (MH+, calc 386.14).

30 Ex.: 199

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.4 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.1 (s, 2H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H) 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.7 (d, 1H), 7.6 (d, 2H), 7.3 (s, 1H), 7.0 (d, 2H), 3.8 (s, 3H), 2.3 (s, 3H). MS (ESI) m/z = 372.9 (MH+, calc 372.2).

Ex.: 200

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.4 ppm, (s, 2H), 9.1 (s, 2H) 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.7 (d, 1H), 7.4 (t, 1H), 7.2 (t, 1H), 7.15-7.05 (m, 2H), 7.0 (t, 1H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 2.3 (s, 3H). MS (ESI) m/z = 373.0 (MH+, calc 372.2).

10 Ex.: 201

¹H NMR (300 MHz, ¹H, DMSO-d6): δ 9.4 ppm (s, 2H), 9.1 (s, 2H), 8.6 (d, 1H), 8.3 (s, 1H), 8.1 (d, 1H), 7.9 (d, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H), 7.3 (t, 1H).

15 MS (ESI) m/z = 297.8 (MH+, calc 297.3).

Example 267 Table 2a

To a solution of 2-[(4-amino)-2-phenol]-3H20 benzoimidazole (0.084 g, 0.31mmol) in 4.5 ml of 2:1

DMF/DCM under nitrogen, is added 4-morpholinecarbonyl

chloride (35 uL, 0.30 mmol) followed by N,N
diisopropylethylamine (108 uL, 0.62 mmol, 2 eq.). After

stirring for 12-18 h the solvent is removed by rotovapor

25 and the crude residue purified by reverse phase HPLC.

Appropriate fractions were combined and lyophilized to a

yellow solid (18 mg, 15 % yield).

Example 285 Table 2a

To a cold (0°C) solution of 2-(5-amino-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-3H-benzimidazole-5-carboxamdine dihydro-chloride (0.203 g, 0.6 mmol) in dry pyridine under nitrogen is added methane sulfonyl chloride (93 uL, 1.2 mmol) dropwise. After stirring the solution for 12-18 h followed by warming it to ambient temperature the solvent is removed and the residue is purified by reverse phase

HPLC. Appropriate fractions were lyophilized to an off white solid. (125 mg, 60% yield).

Table 2a.

$$R_{1}$$
 R_{2}
 R_{3}
 R_{4}
 R_{3}

Formula I

wherein R^1 is OH; and R^5 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and R^{20} represent hydrogen.

				8
Ex.	R²	R³	R⁴	R ⁸
No.				
301	Н	2- (Naphthale ne-2- sulfonylam ino)- ethoxy	Н	Н
302	Н	(2,3- Dichloro- benzylcarbam oyl)-methoxy	Н	Н
303	Н	-OCH ₂ COOH	Н	H
304	Br	-OCH ₂ COOH	Br	H
305	н	(3-Chloro- benzylcarb amoyl)- methoxy	Н	Н
306	Н	(3-bromo- benzylcarb amoyl)- methoxy	Н	Н
307	н	H	4-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- piperidin- 3- ylmethoxy]- benzylamino	Н

Ex.	R ²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
No.			- -	
308	Pyrrolidi	H	H	
ł	n-2- ylmethoxy			
309	H	H	NH ₂	. Н
	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	
310	Н	[(Benzo[1, 3]dioxol-	Н	Н
İ		5- 5-		
1		ylmethyl)-		
		carbamoy1]		
		-methoxy		
311	H	[(3-	Н	Н
		Chloro-		
		benzylcarb amoyl)-		
		methoxy]		
312	1-	Н	Н	H
	carbamimi		:	
i	doy 1-			
	piperidin			
ļ	-3-			
313	ylmethoxy H	Benzylcarb	Н	Н
313	11	amoyl-		11
		methoxy		
314	Н	[2-(1H-	Н	Н
		Indol-2-		
		y1)-		
		ethylcarba moyl]-		
		methoxy		
315	H	(3,5-	Н	Н
		Dimethoxy-		
		benzylcarb		
		amoy1)-		
1 216		methoxy	77	7.7
316	· H	2-[2-(3,4- Dichloro-	Н	Н
1		phenyl)-		
}		acetylamin		
		o]-ethoxy		
317	Н	(2-	H	Н
		Methoxy-		
<u> </u>		benzylcarb		
		amoyl)- methoxy		
	<u> </u>	I ME CHOXY	L	

Ex.	R²	R³	R ⁴	R*
No.				
318	Н	3- Benzoylami no-propoxy	Н	Н
319	Н	[2-(4- Hydroxy- phenyl)- ethylcarba moyl]- methoxy	H	Н
320	Н	3-[2-(3- Bromo- phenyl)- acetylamin o]-propoxy	Н	н
321	Н	3-(3- Phenyl- propionyla mino)- propoxy	Н	Н
322	Н	2- phenylacet ylamino- ethoxy	Н	Н
323	Н	2- Phenylmeth anesulfony lamino- ethoxy	H	Н .
324	H	2-(6,7- Dimethoxy- 3,4- dihydro- 1H- isoquinoli n-2-y1)-2- oxo-ethoxy	H	Н
325	(2-Cyano- ethylcarb amoyl)- methoxy	Н	Н	Н
326	Н	2-(3- Phenyl- propionyla mino)- ethoxy	Н	Н

Ex.	R ²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
No.				
327	Н	2- Benzoylami no-ethoxy	Н	Н
328	н	Н	3- (Piperidin- 4-yloxy)- benzylamino	Н
329	Н	2-(3,4- Dimethoxy- phenyl)- ethylcarba moyl]- methoxy	Н	Н
330	(2- Morpholin- 4-yl- ethylcarba moyl)- methoxy	Н	H	H
331	2-(2- Amino-3- hydroxy- propionyl)- 2,3,4,7- tetrahydr o-1H- [2]pyrind in-6-yl	Н	Н	Н
332	-OCH ₂ C (O) NH-CH ₂ CH ₂ - NHC (O) CH,	Н	Н	Н
333	1-(2-Amino- 3-methyl- butyryl)- pyrrolidin- 2-ylmethoxy	Н	H	Н
334	н	H	NH-CH ₂ -Php-OCH ₂	Н
335	(2-p- Tolyl- ethylcarb amoyl)- methoxy	Н	Н	н

Ex.	R ²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
	, R	K	, R	K
No.				
336	5- Iminometh yl- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-y1	Н	H	H
337	(2,3- Dimethoxy - benzylcar bamoyl)- methoxy	Н	Н	H
338	Н	Н	3-(4- Amino- cyclohexy 1)- propylami no	н
339	Н	[(1H- Benzoimida zol-2- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl] -methoxy	н	Н
340	5-Acetyl- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-yl	Н	Н	Н
341	Н	-OCH₂COOH	Br	Н
242	Н	н	4-(4- Acetimido ylamino- cyclohexy loxy)- benzylami no	Н
343	Br	OCH ₂ CO ₂ C ₂ H ₅	Br	Н

Ex.	R²	T 53	1 -4	
	K	R ³	R	R ⁸
No.				
344	Н	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ CO ₂ Me	Н
345	Н	Н	4-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- piperidin- 4-yloxy]- benzylamino	Н
346	1- Aminoacetyl -piperidin- 3-ylmethoxy	Н	Н	Н
347	Н	(2,3- Dimethoxy- benzylcarba moyl)- methoxy	Н	Н
348	H	H	3-(4- Acetimido ylamino- cyclohexy loxy)- benzylami no	H
349	Н	2-(2,3- Dichloro- benzoylami no)-ethoxy	Н	H .
350	Н	naphthalen- 1- ylcarbamoylm ethoxy	н	H
351	Н	Н	4-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- pyrrolidin- 3-yloxy]- benzylamino	Н
352	H	O(CH ₂),NHC(O) CH,-Ph	Н	Н
353	Br	. Н	(CH ₂) ₂ C(O) NH(CH ₂) ₂ - Ph	Н
354	O(CH ₂),NHC OPh	Н	Н	Н
355	2-(3- Carbamoyl- propionyla mino)- ethoxy	Н	Н	Н

Ex.	R²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
No.				
356	Br	Н	4-[2-(2- Pyridin-2- yl- ethylcarba moyl)- ethyl]- benzoic acid	Н
357	Br	Н	(CH ₂) ₂ C(O) NH(CH ₂) ₃ - Ph	Н
358	н	[(Naphthal en-1- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl] -methoxy	H	Н
359	Н	(3,4- Dimethoxy- benzylcarb amoy1)- methoxy	Н	Н
360	OCH ₂ NHCH ₂ C OOC (CH ₁) ₃	H	Н	H
361	4-(2- Hydroxy- acetylami no)-1- methyl- butoxy	Н	Н	Н
362	Н	(3,5-Bis- trifluoro methyl- benzylcarb amoyl)- methoxy	H	Н
363	Н	2-(3,4- Dichloro- benzoylami no)-ethoxy	Н	Н
364	H	Н	4-[2-(2- Hydroxycar bonimidoyl -pyridin- 3-yloxy)- ethoxy]- benzylamin	Н

Ex.	R ²	R,	R ⁴	R ⁸
No.			1	
365	H .	Н	4-(4- Amino- cyclohexy loxy)- benzylami no	Н
366	Н	Н	3-(3,4- Dicyano- phenoxy)- benzylami no	н
367	Н	Н	(Morpholi ne-4- carbonyl) -amino	Н
368	1-(2- Amino-3- methyl- butyryl)- pyrrolidi n-2- ylmethoxy	Н	H	H
369	H	1-Benzoyl- piperidin- 4-yloxy	Н	н
371	2-(5-0xo- 4,5- dihydro- 3H- pyrrol-2- ylamino)- ethoxy	Н	Н	H
372	5-(2- Amino-3- carboxy- propionyl)- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-yl	H	н	H
373	OCH ₂ C(O)NH (CH ₂) ₂ CH(C H ₁),	Н	Н	Н

Ex.	R²	R³	R ⁴	R*
No.				
374	2-	H	Н	H
ļ	Benzenesu	ļ		
	lfonylami			
L	no-ethoxy	/ OTT		
375	Н	(9H- Fluoren-9-	H	H
		ylcarbamoy		
		1)-methoxy		
376	Н	2-0xo-2-	Н	Н
		(1,3,4,9-		
		tetrahydro		
		-b-		
		carbolin-		
		2-y1)-		
		ethoxy		
377	H	1-(3- Phenyl-	H	Н
		propionyl)		
l	·	propronyr,		·
		piperidin-]	
		4-yloxy		
378	1-(3-	Н	H	H
	Amino-			
	propionyl			
) -			
	pyrrolidi n-2-			
	ylmethoxy			
379	утмесноху Н	Н	1-(1-	Н
			Dimethylsu	
	:		lfamoyl-	
			1H-pyrrol-	
			3-y1)-2- hydroxy-	
			ethylamino	
380	2-(2-	Н	Н	Н
	Chloro-			
	phenyl)-			
	ethoxy		1 (0.)	
381	Н	H	4-(2-Amino- thiazol-5-	Н
			ylmethoxy)-	
	<u></u>		benzylamino	

Ex.	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁸
	K	10		10
No.				
382	н	Н	4-(2,4,6- triamino- pyrimidin -5- ylmethyl) - benzylami no	Н
383	2-[2- (2,5- Dioxo- imidazoli	Н	Н	Н
	din-4- yl)- acetylami no]- ethoxy			
384	4- benzylcar bamoyl- methoxy	Н	Н	Н
385	Н	Н	NH-SO ₂ -CH ₃	Н
386	2- [(Pyridin e-3- carbonyl) -amino]- ethoxy	Н	Н	H
387	Ph-m-NH ₂	Н	Cl	Н
388	-Ph-m- (NH-SO ₂ - CH ₃)	Н	Cl	Н
389	Br	Н	-CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	Н
390	Br	H	2-[2-(2,4- Dichloro- phenyl)- ethylcarba moyl]- ethyl	Н
391	Br	Н	CH2CH2COOCH3	Н
393	1-(3-Amino- propionyl)- pyrrolidin- 2-ylmethoxy	Н	Н	Н

	T 2	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
Ex.	R²	R	R	ĸ
No.				
394	[(Tetrahy dro-furan-2-ylmethyl) carbamoyl]-methoxy	Н	Н	Н
395	OCH ₂ CO ₂ H	Н	Н	Н
396	4,5,6,7- Tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-yl	H	Н	Н
397	piperidin e-3-yl	Н	Cl	Н
298	5- Carbamimi doyl- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-yl	H	H	H
399	1-(2- Amino-3- methyl- butyryl)- pyrrolidi n-2- ylmethoxy	Н	Н	Н
400	1-(2- Amino-3- methyl- butyryl)- pyrrolidi n-2- ylmethoxy	H	Н	Н

		Ţ 	×	
Ex.	R²	R³	R ⁴	₽°
No.				
401	5- Aminoacet yl- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydr o-3H- imidazo[4 ,5- c]pyridin -2-yl	Н	Н	Н
402	5-(3-Amino- propionyl)- 4,5,6,7- tetrahydro- 3H- imidazo[4,5 -c]pyridin- 2-yl	Н	Н	·H
403	1-(2-Amino- 1-imino- ethyl)- piperidin- 3-yl	Н	Cl	Н
404	Н	Н	4-{4- [phenylmeth yl amino]- phenoxy}- piperidine- 1- carboxylic acid tert- butyl ester	Н
405	2-(3- Biphenyl- 2-yl- ureido)- ethoxy	H	Н	Н
406	O(CH ₂) ₂ - NH-C(O)- CH ₂ OCH3	H	Н	Н
407	Н	Н	4- (Piperidin- 4-yloxy)- benzylamino	н
408	Н	Н	4- (Piperidin- 3- ylmethoxy)- benzylamino	Н

Ex.	R ²	R³	R ⁴	R ⁸
	10	**		
No.				
409	н	3-(3,4- Dichloro- benzoylami no)- propoxy	Н	Н
410	Н	Pyrrolidin- 2-ylmethoxy	Н	Н
411	Н	(Benzyl- methyl- carbamoyl) -methoxy	Н	Н
412	Н	OCH ₂ C (O) NH - (CH ₂) ₂ Ph	Н	Н
413	Br	(2,3- Dichloro- benzylcarb amoy1)- methoxy	Br	Н
414	Н	Н	4- (pyrrolidin -3-yloxy)- benzylamino	Н .
415	Н	Н	4-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- piperidin -4- yloxy]- benzylami no	Н
416	Н	н	4-(2- Acetylamino -thiazol-5- ylmethoxy)- benzylamino	Н
417	H	H	4-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- pyrrolidin- 2- ylmethoxy]- benzylamino	н
418	Н	Н	3-[1-(1- Imino- ethyl)- pyrrolidin- 3-yloxy]- benzylamino	н

		, 		,
Ex.				1
No.	R ²	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁸
1			K	K
419	Н	2-(3-	Н	Н
		bromo-		
		benzoylami		
		no)-ethoxy		
420	Н	2-(3,5-	Н	H
1		Dichloro-		
		benzoylami		
421	Н	no)-ethoxy	Н.	H
421	11	[(Naphthal	, n	п п
]		ene-2-		
		carbonyl)-		Į į
		amino]-		
		ethoxy		
422	Br	H	2-Phenyl	Н
			carbamoyl	
			-ethoxy	
423	O(CH ₂) ₂ -	H	Н	Н
	NH- C(O)CH ₂ NH-			
1	COO-			
	C (CH,),			
424	O(CH ₂) ₂ -	Н	Н	Н
	NH-			
	C(O)NH-		1	
	CH,-Ph			
425	O(CH ₂) ₂ -NH- C(O)CH ₂ NH ₂	H	H	Н
426	O(CH ₂) ₂ -NH-	Н	Н	Н
	C(O)CH,-Ph			
427	O(CH ₂) ₂ -NH-	Н	H	H
[C(O)(CH ₂) ₂ - Ph			
428	3-Amino-	Н	Н	Н
	benzyloxy			
429	Br	ОН	Br	Н
430	Н	Н	3-(4-Amino-	Н
			cyclohexylo xy)-	
1			benzylamino	

Ex.		<u> </u>	T	
	R ²	_3	_4	8
No	R	R ³	R ⁴	R ⁸
431	Н	Н	3-[4-	. н
			(methyl	** •
			amino)-	
ı			phenoxy]-	
			pyrrolidine	
1			-1-	
			carboxylic acid tert-	
			butyl ester	
e32	Br	Н	2-	Н
		••	[(benzo[1,3	
İ]dioxol-5-	
			ylmethyl)-	
			carbamoyl]-	
222	D		ethyl	
333	Br	H	2-(2- Morpholin-	Н
	ĺ		4-yl-	
			ethylcarbam	
			oyl)-ethyl	
e34	Br	H	2-	Н
			Benzylcarba	,
- 35	_		moyl-ethyl	
e35	Br	H	Benzylcarba	Н
e36	Br	H	moyl-methyl phenethylca	Н
630		п	rbamoyl-	u
			methyl	
e37	Br	H	(2-Hydroxy-	Н
			ethylcarbam	
430			oyl)-methyl	
438	Br	Н	tetrahydro-	Н
			furan-2- ylmethyl-	
			carbamoyl-	
			methyl	
439	Br	Н	Benzo[1,3]	Н
			dioxol-5-	ļ
			ylmethyl)-	
			carbamoyl]-	
440	Br	Н	methy1 2-(3-	Н
**	PT	п	Chloro-	п
			benzylcarba	
			moy1)-ethyl	ļ
441	Br	Н	2-(4-	Н
		İ	Chloro-	
]			benzylcarba	
442	Day.		moyl) -ethyl	
442	Br	H	2-(Methyl- phenethyl-	Н
			carbamoy1)-	
			ethyl	j
				

Ex.	R²	R ³	R⁴	R ⁸
3443	Br	Н	2- Methylcarba moyl-ethyl	н
444	Br	H	2- dimethylcar bamoyl- ethyl	н
445	3- aminophenyl	H	2-carboxy- ethyl	Н
446	3- nitrophenyl	Н	2-carboxy- ethyl	Н
447	3- aminophenyl	Н	2- Phenethylca rbamoyl- ethyl	Н
448	Br	Н	2- Phenethylca rbamoyl- ethyl	Н
449	Cl	Н	2- Benzylcarba moyl-ethyl	Н
450	Cl	H	2- Phenethylca rbamoyl- ethyl	Н
451	Cl	Н	3-(3,4- Dihydro-1H- isoquinolin -2-yl)-3- oxo-propyl	н
452	C1	Н	2-(2,2- Diphenyl- ethylcarbam oyl)-ethyl	н
453	Cl	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	F
454	C1	H	2- [(naphthale n-1- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl]- ethyl	Н
455	Br	Н	2-tert- Butoxycarbo nylamino- ethyl	Н
456	Cl	Н	2- (Benzhydryl- carbamoyl)- ethyl	Н

Ex. No	R²	R³	R⁴	R ⁸
357	Br	Н	2-amino- ethyl	Н
458	C1	Н	2-[(Furan- 2- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl]- ethyl	н
459	Br	Н	3-(4- Chloro- benzenesulf onylamino)- 3-oxo- propyl	Н
460	Br	Н	2- Phenylmetha nesulfonyla mino-ethyl	Н
461	Br	H	2- (Naphthalen e-2- sulfonylami no)-ethyl	Н
462	C1	Н	2-(3,5- dimethoxy- benzylamin o)-ethyl	н
		Н		

 $^{{}^{*}}R^{7} = C(=O)NH_{2}$

Spectral data for compounds listed in Table 2 above is provided below:

Ex. 301

5 Mass, MS (ESI) 481.11 (calc.); 482.2. (obs.)

Ex. 308

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.50 (s, 2H), 9.24 (s, 2H), 8.4-8.1 (br m, 2H), 8.00- 7.86 (m, 2H), 7.79 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.26 (t, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.02 (t, 1H, 9Hz), 5.19 (d, 1H, J = 22 Hz), 4.25-3.25 (br.m), 2.12-2.00 (br m, 2H). MS (ESI): 394.18 (calc.); 394.9 (obs.).

Ex. 312

MS (Bioion): 407.21 (calc.); 408 (obs.)

EX. 325

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.41 (br.s, 2H), 9.05 (br.s, 2H), 8.22 25 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.83 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.75 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.63 (s, 2H), 3.42 (m, 2H), 2.73 (t, 2H, J = 6.4 Hz).

MS: 378.14 (calc.); 379.2 (obs.).

30

Ex. 330

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.54 (s, 2H), 9.26 (s, 2H), 8.27 (s, 1H), 7.94 (m, 2H), 7.81 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.26 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.03 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.65 (s, 2H), 3.95-3.78 (m, 4H), 3.60-3.47 (m, 4H), 3.27-3.10 (m, 4H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 438.20; Found 439.1.

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

EX. 332

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.53 (br.s, 2H), 9.23 (br.s, 2H), 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.97 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.92 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.84 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.28 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.05 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.60 (s, 2H), 3.25-3.15 (m, 4H), 1.80 (s, 3H).

MS: 410.17 (calc.); 411.0 (obs.).

10 Ex. 333

¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.38-8.26 (m, 1H), 8.22 9s, 1H), 7.95-7.78 (m, 2H), 7.51 (d, 1H, J = 10 Hz), 7.27 (d, 1H, 14 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, H = 14 Hz), 4.40-4.29 (m, 1H), 4.29-4.20 (d, 1H, J = 12 Hz), 4.02 (t, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 3.85-3.40 (br.m), 2.40-1.80 (br.m, 8H), 0.95 (m, 9H).

MS: 450.24 (calc.); 451.1 (obs.).

Ex. 335

- ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.34 (br.s, 2H), 8.96 (br.s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H), J = 8.5 Hz), 7.80 (d, 1H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.71 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.14-6.95 (m, 6H), 4.56 (s, 2H), 3.40 (t, 2H, J = 7.5 Hz), 2.71 (t, 2H, J = 7.5 Hz), 2.22 (s, 3H).
- 25 MS: 443.2 (calc.); 444.1 (obs.).

Ex.: 337

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.55 (2H, br.s), 9.26 (2H, br.s), 8.28 (1H, s), 7.98-7.82 (3H, m), 7.27 (1H, d, J= 8.0 hz), 7.07-30 6.92 (3H, m), 6.83 (1H, d, J = 7.4 Hz), 4.69 (2H, s), 4.40 (2H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.74 (2H, s).

MS(ES): Calc: 475.19; Obs.: 475.7.

Ex. 346

 1 H-NMR (DMSO- d_{6}) δ ppm: 9.45 (sm 1H), 9.15 (s, 1H), 8.4-8.05 (m, 4H), 8.0-7.7 (m, 4H), 7.4-7.25 (m, 1H), 7.05 (m, 1H), 4.5-3.5 (m), 3.2-2.7 (m, 2H), 2.2-1.3 (m, 7H). MS (ESI): 422.9 (calc.); 422.21 (obs.)

5

10

Ex. 353

¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ : 9.39 (s, 2H), 9.04 (s, 2H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 8.08 (s, 1H), 8.03 (m, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H, J= 8.4 Hz), 7.76 (d, 1H, J= 8.4 Hz), 7.61 (s, 1H), 7.15 (m, 4H), 3.25 (br. m, 2H), 2.85 (br.m, 2H), 2.61 (t, 2H, J= 7.2 Hz0, 2.46 (br.m, 2H).

MS (LRMS) M+1: Calc: 505.11; Obs.: 506.06.

Ex.: 354

15 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.47 (s, 2H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.94-7.77 (m, 5H), 7.53-7.44 (m, 3H), 7.30 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.02 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.20 (t, 2H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.70 (m, 2H).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 415.16; Found 416.2.

20

Ex. 355

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.49 (s, 2H), 9.17 (s, 2H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.82 (m, 2H), 7.25 (d, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.04 (t, 1H, J = 7.7 Hz), 4.06 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.46 (m, 2H), 2.30 (m, 4H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 410.17; Found 411.1.

30

Ex. 360

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.35 (s, 2H), 8.94 (s, 2H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.86-7.70 (m, 3H), 7.17 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.63 (s, 2H), 3.82 (s, 2H), 1.39 (s, 9H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 439.19; Found 440.1.

35

Ex. 361

¹H-NMR (methanol-d₄) δ ppm: 9.55 (s, 0.5 H), 9.10 (s, 0.5H), 8.35 (s, 1H), 8.09 (d, 1H), 8.00 (d, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 7.52 (d, 1H), 7.20 (t, 1H), 4.1 (br.m, 1H), 4.41 (m, 1H),

4.22 (m, 1H), 4.1 (m, 1H), 3.50 (m, 2H), 3.35 (m, 1H), 2.07 (m, 5H).

MS (ESI): 409.18 (calc.), 410.0 (obs.)

5 **Ex. 367**

MS: 380.16 (calc.); 381.0 (obs.).

Ex. 368

¹H-NMR (methanol-d₄) δ ppm: 8.40 (s, 1H), 8.09 (d, 1H), 8.00 (m, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 7.59 (d, 1H), 7.20 (t, 1H), 4.51 (m, 2H), 4.09 (m, 2H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.33 (m, 2H), 2.40-2.00 (m, 6H), 1.45-1.25 (m, 4H), 1.19 (m, 6H).

MS (ESI): 450.24 (calc.), 451.2 (obs.)

15

Ex. 371

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.47 (s, 2H), 9.16 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.92 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.78 (m, 2H), 7.23 (d, 1H, J = 20 7.3 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1H, J = 7.3 Hz), 4.06 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.50 (m, 2H), 2.64 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m. 2H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 392.16; Found 393.2.

25

EX.373

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.4 (br.s, 2H), 9.03 (br.s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.91-7.73 (m, 3H), 7.18 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.00 (t, 1H, j = 8.1 Hz), 4.57 (s, 2H), 3.18 (t, 2H, J = 7.2 hz), 1.55 (m, 1H), 1.35 (m, 2H), 0.86 (d, 6H, J = 6.6 hz).

30 MS: 395.2 (calc.); 396.1 (obs.).

Ex. 374

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.11 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.93-7.76 (m, 5H), 7.62-7.57 (m, 3H), 7.11 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.03 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.18 (t, 2H, J = 5.4 Hz).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 451.13; Found 452.1.

Ex. 378

¹H-NMR (methanol-d₄) δ ppm: 9.6 (s, 2H), 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.36 (s, 1H), 8.18 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 8.00 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.70 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.57 (d, 1H, 8 Hz), 7.16 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 4.55 (m, 1H), 4.43 (dd, 1H), 4.07 (t, 1H), 3.70-3.40 (m, 2H), 3.24 (m, 1H), 2.80 (t, 2H), 2.3-2.0 (m, 5H). MS (ESI): 422.21 (calc.), 423.1 (obs.)

10 Ex. 380

¹H-NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.40 (s, 2H), 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.87-7.72 (m, 3H), 7.53-7.19 (m, 5H), 6.97 (t, 1H, J = 7.9 Hz), 4.27 (t, 2H, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.21 (t, 2H, J = 7.1 Hz).

15 MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 406.12; Found 407.0.

Ex. 383

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.06 (s, 2H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.77 (m, 2H), 7.21 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.22 (dd, 1H, J = 7.1, 4.2), 4.06 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.47 (t, 1H, J = 5.5 Hz) 2.56 (m, 2H).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 451.16; Found 452.3.

25

EX. 384

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.45 (br.s, 2H), 9.11 (br.s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.94-7.76 (m, 3H), 7.35-7.22 (m, 6H), 7.03 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2H), 4.40 (s, 2H).

30 MS: 415.16 9calc.); 416.1 (obs.).

Ex.385

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.51 (s, 1H), 9.29 (br.s, 2H), 9.03 (br.s, 2H), 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.83 (d, 1H, J = 7 Hz), 7.70 (d, 1H, J = 7 Hz), 7.25 (dd, 1H) 7.09 (d, 1H, J = 7 Hz), 2.96 (s, 3H).

MS: 345.09 (calc.); 345.9 (obs.).

Ex. 386

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.46 (s, 2H), 9.23 (s, 1H), 9.14 (s, 2H), 8.88 (d, 1H, J = 5.3 Hz), 8.67 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.23 (s, 1H), 7.92-7.76 (m, 4H), 7.28 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.01 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.23 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.74 (m, 2H).

MS (ESI, M^++1): Calc. 416.16; Found 417.1.

10

Ex. 387 2-(3'-Amino-5-chloro-2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 10.40 (br s, 2H), 9.44 (s, 2H), 9.12 (s, 2H), 8.43 (s, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, 1H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.77 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.70 (s, 1H), 7.65 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.57 (t, 1H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.55 (s, 1H), 7.38 (d, 1H, J = 7.4 Hz).

MS (CI): Calc. 377.1, Found 378.6.

20

25

Ex. 388

 1 H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.88 (s, 1H), 9.42 (s, 2H), 9.11 (s, 2H), 8.38 (s, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, 1H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.77 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.50-7.30 (m, 4H), 7.23 (d, 1H, J = 7.5 Hz), 3.05 (s, 3H).

MS (ESI, M+1): Calc. 455.1, Found 456.0.

Ex. 389

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ ppm: 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.09 (s, 2H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H, J= 8.43 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, J= 8.43 Hz), 7.66 (s, 1H), 2.84 (t, 2H, J= 7.4 Hz), 2.63 (t, 2H, J= 7.4 Hz).

MS (ESI, M+1): Calc. 402.03, Found 403.1

35

Ex. 393 2-[3-(1-Aminoacetyl-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy)-2-hydroxy-phenyl]-3H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine

MS: 408.19 (calc.); 409.0 (obs.)

40

Ex.: 394

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.45 (2H, br.s), 9.14 (2H, br.s), 8.25 (1H, s), 7.94-7.77 (3H, m), 7.22 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.02 (1H, s, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.62 (2H, s), 3.87-3.56 (4H, m), 3.24 (2H, m), 1.80 (2H, m), 1.50 (1H, m). MS(ES): Calc.: 409.18; Obs.: 410.0.

Ex. 395

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.48 (br.s, 2H), 9.18 (br.s, 2H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 7.95-7.77 (m, 3H), 7.11 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 hz), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.82 9s, 2H). MS: 326.10 (calc.) 326.8 (obs.).

15 Ex. 396

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 10.15 (s, 1H); 10.05 (s, 1H); 9.5 (s, 2H); 9.2 (s, 2H); 8.6 (d, 1H); 8.3 (s, 1H); 7.9 (d, 1H); 7.8 (d, 1H); 7.3 (t, 1H); 4.19 (s, 2H); 3.5 (t, 2H); 3.05 (t, 2H).

MS: 373.17 (calc); 374.5 (obs.).

Ex. 398

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.1 (s, 2H), 8.45 (d, 1H); 8.25 (s, 1H); 8.23 (d, 1H); 7.85 (s, 3H); 7.83 (d, 1H); 7.8 (d, 1H); 7.3 (t, 1H); 4.75 (s, 2H); 3.8 (t, 2H); 2.9 (t, 2H).

MS: 415.19 (calc.); 416.1 (obs.).

30

35

20

Ex. 399

 $^{1}H-NMR$ (methanol-d₄) d ppm: 8.36 (s, 1H), 8.07 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.98 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.70 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.52 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.16 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 4.58 (p, 1H), 4.36 (m, 1H), 4.20-4.10 (m, 2H), 3.80-3.60 (m, 2H), 3.30 (m, 1H), 2.40-2.00 (m, 6H), 1.41 (d, 1H), 1.32 (s, 1H), 1.13 (d, 3H), 1.03 (d, 3H).

MS (ESI): 450.24 (calc.), 451.2 (obs.)

Ex. 400

¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ: 9.40 (s, 2H), 9.05 (s, 2H), 8.30 (br.s, 2H), 7.90-7.70 (m, 4H), 7.21 (d, 1H, J= 7 Hz), 7.15-6.50 (t, 1H, J= 7 Hz), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.20-4.07 (m, 2H), 4.07-3.95 (m, 1H), 3.75-3.60 (m, 1H), 3.60-3.25 (m, 6H), 2.10-180 (m, 6H), 0.95 (t, 3H), 0.85 (t, 3H). MS (ESI): Calc.: 450.24; Obs.: 451.1.

Ex. 401

10 MS (ES): 430.19 (calc.); 429.0 (obs.).

Ex. 402

MS (ES): Calc.: 444.2; Obs.: 444.9.

15 Ex. 40:

MS: 426.2 (calc.); 427.0 (obs.).

Ex. 405

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.38 (s, 2H), 9.03 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.88-7.75 (m, 4H), 7.45-6.99 (m, 10H), 4.04 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.44 (m, 2H).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 506.21; Found 507.2.

25

5

Ex. 406

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.58 (s, 2H), 9.29 (s, 2H), 8.29 (s, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H, J = 9.1 Hz), 7.86 (m, 2H), 7.27 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.04 (t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.09 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.84 (s, 2H), 3.57 (m, 2H) 3.30 (s, 3H). MS (ESI, M^+ +1): Calc. 383.16; Found 384.0.

35

Ex.423

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.42 (s, 2H), 9.10 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.90-7-74 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.06 (m, 2H), 3.50 (m, 4H), 1.35 (s. 9H). MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 468.21; Found 469.2.

Ex. 424

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.43 (s, 2H), 9.10 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.89 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.81-7.75 (m, 2H), 7.30-7.18 (m, 6H), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.22 (s, 2H), 4.05 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.43 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz).

MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 444.19; Found 445.2.

10

Ex. 425

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.36 (s, 2H), 9.07 (s, 2H), 8.72 (m, 1H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.84 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.76 (m, 2H), 7.18 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.10 (t, 2H, J = 5.4), 3.57 (m, 4H).

MS (ESI, M⁺ +1): Calc. 368.16; Found 369.0.

型 位 20 页

Ñ

T

W D

回 口 11 30

Ex. 426

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.45 (s, 2H), 9.13 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.91 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.83 (m, 2H), 7.27-7.20 (m, 6H), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 4.08 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.48 (m, 2H), 3.46 (s, 2H).

MS (ESI, M^++1): Calc. 429.18; Found 430.1.

Ex. 427

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.46 (s, 2H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.80 (m, 2H), 7.24-7.12 (m, 6H), 7.00 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 4.02 (t, 2H, J = 5.6 Hz), 3.46 (m, 2H), 2.82 (t, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 2.41 (t, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz).

MS (ESI, $M^+ + 1$): Calc. 443.20; Found 444.1.

Ex. 428

40

35

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 9.41 (s, 2H), 9.08 (s, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.88-7.73 (m, 3H), 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.32 (m, 1H), 7.24 (d, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.98 (t, 1H, J = 8.0 Hz), 5.26 (s, 2H). MS (ESI, M⁺+1): Calc. 373.15; Found 374.0.

10

20

SYNTHESIS OF INDOLE BASED COMPOUNDS OF FORMULA I

Procedures LI through LXI discuss the synthesis of precursors useful in synthesizing indole based compounds of Formula I. These indole based compounds of Formula I can be structurally represented as follows.

$$R^7$$
 R^8
 R^9
 R^{20}
 R^5
 R^4
 R^3
 R^2

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 , R^9 and R^{20} are as described in the detailed description.

Compounds of Formula I having the indole nucleus can be synthesized by using commercially available ketones or carboxylic acids, for example compounds <u>210</u> to <u>237</u>, and aldehyde compounds <u>240(a)</u> to <u>240(e)</u> which can be prepared by schemes LI through LXI. discussed below.

Scheme LI illustrates the general procedure for condensation of acetophenones and substituted aromatic

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

aldehydes, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 and R^5 are as described in the detailed description section above.

Compounds of Formula 201 wherein R20 is CH,R can be prepared by methods illustrated by Scheme LI. For example compound 204 wherein R1 is hydrogen, R2 and R4 are fluoro is hydrogen, i.e., 1-(3,5-difluoro-2hydroxyphenyl)ethanone 204 (6.3 mmol) and benzaldehyde (7.56 mmol) are mixed in ethanol (20 mL) and aqueous barium hydroxide (2 gm in 15 mL water) (aqueous NaOH (10 %) may be substituted for barium hydroxide) is added. The mixture is stirred for 12-18 h at 60° (reaction times can vary between 3 h to 18 h). The mixture was filtered and the solids which were collected were washed with water (30 mL) and ether (20 mL). The solids are taken up in 1N HCl (30 and the solution extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic extracts are washed with water, brine and dried afford 1-(3,5-difluoro-2-hydroxyphenyl)-3propenone the title compound 205 as a yellow-brown solid in a 70% yield.

1-(3,5-difluoro-2-hydroxyphenyl)-3-propenone <u>205</u> was catalytically hydrogenated using PtO₂-C (10%) as a catalyst (can substitute Pd-C or Pd(OH)₂ as catalysts) and ethyl acetate as a solvent for 15 min (or until reduction is completed). The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated to yield 1-(3,5-difluoro-2-hydroxyphenyl)-3-propan-1-one <u>206</u> (Example 505, Table IIIa).

30

25

35 Scheme LII

15

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Scheme LII illustrates synthesis of ketones $\underline{210}$, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , and R^5 are as defined in the detailed description section above.

For example 1-(5-bromo-2-hydroxy phenyl)ethanone 206 (6.6 g, 30.7 mmol), methyl acrylate (4.17 mL, 46 mmol), triphenyl phosphine (2.43 g, 9 mmol), palladium acetate (1.03 g, 4.6 mmol), and triethyl amine (6.07 g, 60 mmol) were combined with benzene (100 mL) and refluxed over 18 h. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature, diluted with 0.05 N HCl (100 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer is separated and further washed with water and then brine solution. The organic layer is dried $(MgSO_{\lambda})$, and concentrated to yield an oily residue. Purification of this residue by column chromatography (10:1.5, hexanes: ethyl acetate) afforded 5-(2-carboxy vinyl-2-hydroxy) benzoic acid 207 as a yellow solid.

15

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 300 MHz) •: 12.22 (s, 1H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.67 (d, 1H, J = 16 Hz), 7.0 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.8 (d, 1H, J = 16 Hz).

5-(2-carboxy vinyl-2-hydroxy)benzoic acid <u>207</u> was converted to 3-[4-yydroxy-3-(3-phenyl-acryloyl)-phenyl]-acrylic acid as described by general condensation procedure in Scheme LI above, to yield <u>208</u>.

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 12.81 (s, 1H), 8.54 (s, 1H), 8.12 (d, 1H, J = 5.5 Hz), 7.91 (m, 4H), 7.67 (d, 1H, J = 16.0 Hz), 7.49 (m, 3H), 7.04 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.57 (d, 1H, J = 6.0 Hz).

 $MS(M^{\dagger})$: Calc.: 294.3; Obs.: 294.5.

3-[4-Hydroxy-3-(3-phenyl-acryloyl)-phenyl]-acrylic acid was converted to 3-[4-hydroxy-3-(3-phenyl-propionyl)-phenyl]-propionic acid **209** as described by general reduction procedure in Scheme LI.

General procedure for brominating at position R2

The carboxylic acid 209, for example 3-[4-Hydroxy-3-20 (3-phenyl-propionyl)-phenyl]-propionic acid, (1.04 gm, 3.4 g mmol) was dissolved in DMF (7 mL) and N-bromosuccinimide (0.65 g, 3.66 mmol) was added to the solution. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2.5 h, diluted with 25 ether and the organic layer was separated and washed with water and brine and then filtered through a magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (3.5:1.5:0.1 hexane:ethyl acetate:acetic acid) to give 0.5 g of 3-[3bromo-4-hydroxy-5-(3-phenyl-propionyl)-phenyl]-propionic 30 acid 210 as a yellow-brown oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 7.61 9 (d, 1H, J= 1.9 Hz), 7.54 (d, 1H, J= 1.9 Hz), 7.27 (m, 5H), 3.33 (t,2H, J= 7.3 Hz), 3.06 (t, 2H, J= 7.8 Hz), 2.86 (t, 2H, J= 2,23 Hz), 2.64 (br.t, 2H).

35 LRMS M+1: Calc.: 376.03; Obs.: 377.9.

10

15

20

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Scheme LIII illustrates the synthesis of ketones <u>212</u> to <u>216</u>.

Preparation of 1-(5-chloromethyl-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethanone <u>211</u> was accomplished using the procedure of Florall, L; Ross, S.B et al., Acta Pharm. Suec, V 15, 1478, p 13-22.

1-(3-Bromo-5-chloromethyl-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethanone 212

A solution of N-bromosuccinimide (10 mmol) in 8 mL of DMF is added dropwise to a solution of 1-(5-chloromethyl-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethanone **211** (10 mmol) in 20 mL DMF and the resulting mixture is stirred for 12-18 h. The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue is diluted with water resulting in the formation of a solid. The solid is isolated and recrystallized from ethanol to yield 1-(3-Bromo-5-chloromethyl-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethanone **212**.

15

20

25

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ ppm:2.68 (s, 3H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 7.72 (q, 1H, J=2.1 Hz), 7.78 (q, 1H, J= 2.1 Hz), 13.02 (s, 1H). MS: Found: 264; Calc.: 263.52

5 (3-acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetonitrile **213** (Ex. 508)

A solution of 1-(3-Bromo-5-chloromethyl-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethanone 212 (7.6 mmol) in 6 mL DMSO is added dropwise to a suspension of 8.2 mmol of NaCN in 4 mL DMSO. The mixture is stirred for 12-18 h and diluted with 80 mL water to yield a solid. The solid is isolated and recrystallized from ethanol to yield (3-acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetonitrile 213 in a 58% yield.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 2.7 (s, 3H), 3.81 (s, 2H), 7.75 (s, 2H), 13.03 (s, 1H).

MS: Calc.: 244.08; Found: 255.0.

(3-Acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetic acid <u>214</u> (Example 506, Table IIIa)

(3-acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetonitrile **213** (6 g, 23.6, mmol) is refluxed in a mixture of 50 mL acetic acid, 5 mL conc. H₂SO₄ and 5 mL water for about 2-3 h. This refluxed mixture is cooled to ambient temperature and poured onto ice forming a solid. The solid is isolated and recrystallized from a ethanol-water mixture to yield (3-acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetic acid **214** in a 47 % yield.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 2.67 (s, 3H), 3.59 (s, 2H), 7.62 (d, 1H, J= 1.9 Hz), 7.69 (d, 1H, J=1.9 Hz), 12.85 (s, 1H).

30 MS: Calc.: 273.08; Found: 274.0.

Synthesis of $\underline{215}$ and $\underline{216}$ can be accomplished by following the procedures outlined for $\underline{213}$ and $\underline{214}$ respectively.

Synthesis of 1-(3-acetyl-5-bromo-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-4-35 phenyl-butan-2-one <u>217</u> (Example 500, Table IIIa) is

accomplished from **216** following steps 2, 3 and 4 in Scheme LII above.

Scheme LIV

5

10

20

Scheme LIV illustrates synthesis of <u>220</u> which is useful in synthesizing compounds of Formula I.

2-hydroxy-3-phenylbenzoic acid (218, 3.0 g, 14 mmol) is dissolved in EtOAc (50 ml) and a few drops of DMF are added. Oxalyl chloride (2.5 ml, 1.5 eq) is added and the reaction is stirred under a dry atmosphere for 1 h. The reaction mixture is then concentrated in vacuo to yield a mixture of clear oil and white solid. This mixture is diluted with CH,Cl, (50 ml) followed by the addition of N, O-dimethyl hydroxylamine hydrochloride (1.5 g, 1.1 eq) and triethylamine (3.9 ml, 2 eq). This mixture is stirred for 12-18 h under a dry atmosphere. Dilution of the reaction mixture with EtOAc and subsequent washing with dilute HCl and brine, followed by drying (MgSO,) concentration in vacuo yields a mixture of reaction products. Flash chromatography (20/80 EtOAc/Hexanes) afforded N-methoxy-N-methyl-2-hydroxy-3-phenylbenzamide (219, 1.09g) as a white solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 11.42 (s, 1H) 7.94 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.7, 8.1 Hz) 7.61-7.58 (m, 1H) 7.48-7.36 (m, 6 H) 6.93 (t, 1 H, J = 2.3, 3.4 Hz) 3.70 (s, 3 H) 3.45 (s, 3 H).

220

N-methoxy-N-methyl-2-hydroxy-3-phenylbenzamide (219, 2.37 g, 9.2 mmol) is dissolved in dry THF (40 ml) under

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

nitrogen and cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. MeMgBr (6.5 ml, 2.1 eq) is added and the resulting heterogeneous reaction is stirred for 1 h, THF (50 ml) is added to facilitate stirring, followed by excess MeMgBr. The reaction is then stirred for 3 days followed by quenching with dilute HCl. This mixture is then partitioned between ether and water. The organic phase is washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated in vacuo to yield a mixture of starting material (219) and product (220). Flash chromatography (EtOAc/Hexanes) affords 2-hydroxy-3-phenylacetophenone (220, 0.78 g) as a white solid.

Example 522, Table IIIa: Prepared according to literature procedure: Sipos, G.; Szalo, R. Acta Physica et Chemica, Vol. 7, 1961, pp. 126-128.

Example 503, Table IIIa

NBS (240 mmol) is added to a methanol solution of 2'-hydroxy-1-benzyl acetophenone (10 mmol) at 0°C. The reaction is warmed to ambient temperature and stirred for 12 hours followed by dilution with water to yield a precipitate. The precipitate is isolated and dried under reduced pressure to yield 3.1 g of the title compound 503. $^1\!H$ NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 13.0 (s, 1H), 7.85 (s, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 7.4-7.2 (m, 5H), 3.4 (t, 2H), 3.2 (t, 2H).

Example 515, Table IIIa

The title compound <u>515</u> is prepared by bromination of 2'-hydroxy-1-methyl acetophenone using the procedure for 30 <u>503</u>, above.

15

20

25

Scheme LV

$$O_2N$$
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N
 O_2N

Example 502, Table IIIa (Scheme LV)

<u>221</u> is prepared by the condensation procedure described in Scheme L1 above.

222 is prepared by the procedure discussed below:

In a 100 mL round bottom flask and under a nitrogen atmosphere, anhydrous benzene (20 mL) is added to $\underline{221}$ (2.5 g, 0.009 mol). To this solution is added (CuHPPh₃)₆ (7.0 g, 0.0035 mol). The reaction mixture is stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hr, stirred open to the atmosphere vigorously for 30 min, filtered through a pad of silica and eluted with 20% EtOAc/Hex. The filtrate is reduced and the residue purified by column chromatography on SiO₂ with 20%Et₂O/hex as the eluent to give 222 as a yellow solid: 1.4 g, 0.0049 mol, 55%. MS (ESI) Calc for $C_{16}H_{15}NO_4$: 285.10, Found: MH+ 286.0.

¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 11.58 (s, 1 H), 8.14 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.73 (s, 1 H), 7.59 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.31 (d, 1 H, J = 9.3 Hz), 6.86 (d, 1 H, J = 9.3 Hz), 3.47 (t, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 3.1 (t, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 2.27 (s, 3 H).

The title compound $\underline{223}$, wherein $R^2 = Br$, is prepared by brominating $\underline{222}$ by the procedure in Scheme LII above. MS (ESI) Calc for $C_{16}H_{15}NO_4Br$: 363.03, Found: MH+ 363.6.

¹HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ : 12.49 (s, 1 H), 8.17 (d, 2 H, J=9.4 Hz), 7.81 (s, 1 H), 7.72 (s, 1 H), 7.60 (d, 2 H, J = 9.4Hz), 3.57 (t, 2 H, J = 8.2 Hz), 3.09 (t, 2 H, J = 8.2 Hz), 2.27 (s, 3 H).

5

Example 510, Table IIIa: General procedure for acetylation at the 2-position of phenols:

Scheme LVI

$$R^{5}$$
 $Ac_{2}O, NaOH$
 R^{2}
 OAC
 R^{2}
 $Ac_{2}O, NaOH$
 R^{3}
 R^{2}
 R^{3}
 R^{4}
 R^{2}
 R = CH3 (226), ex 510, Table IIIa

R = CH2CH2Ph(227), ex504, Table IIIa

10

20

25

Ac_.O (60 mmol) is slowly added to a solution of water (30 ml), NaOH (60 mmol) and the phenol (224, 50 mmol) at 0° C. The reaction mixture is stirred for 10 min and then extracted with diethyl ether. The ether layer is washed with water, dried (MgSO1) and concentrated to yield 9.6 g of the aryl acetate 225.

¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 7.26 (br.s, 1H), 7.08 (br.d, 1H, J= 8.2 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1H, J= 8.21 Hz), 2.38 (s, 3H), 2.37 (s,3H).

The aryl acetate (225) and AlCL, (20 mmol each) were heated for 2 hours at 150° C. The reaction mixture is then diluted with HCl and water to yield the 226. The product is filtered and dried under reduced pressure.

¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 12.7 (s, 1H), 7.47 (br.s, 1H), 7.42 (br.s, 1H), 2.65 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H).

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Example 521, Table IIIa: The title compound is prepared from 2'-hydroxy-3'-chloro acetophenone by alkylation with benzyl bromide using the procedure described for ex. 517, Table IIIa.

Example 513, Table IIIa: The title compound is prepared from ex. 525 by alkylation with benzyl bromide using the procedure described for ex. 517, Table IIIa.

10 Example 504, Table IIIa: The title compound is prepared from ex. 510 by alkylation with benzyl bromide using the procedure described for ex. 517, Table IIIa.

Example 512, Table IIIa: The title compound is prepared from 4-cyano phenol as shown in Scheme LVII below:

Scheme LVII

R = Br (231), ex. 512, Table IIIa

20 Step 1 and 2 are as described in Scheme LVI above. Step 3 is as described in Scheme LII above.

229: ¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 7.7 (d, 2H, J= 8.77 Hz), 7.3 (d, 4H, J= 8.80 Hz).

230: ¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 12.7 (s, 1H), 8.15 (d, 1H, J= 2.0 Hz), 7.78 (dd, 1H, J= 8.74 Hz), 7.15 (d, 1H, J= 8.66 Hz), 2.7 (s, 3H).

231: ¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 7.9 (br.s, 2H), 2.45 (s, 3H).

Example 507, Table IIIa: N-chloro succinimide (NCS) (12mmol) and 1-benzyl-2'-hydroxy acetophenone (10 mmol) are heated at 70° in methanol for two weeks. The mixture is then extracted with ether, and washed with water and concentrated to yield the title compound (1.8 g). The product is purified by flash chromatography on silica column using 1:3 diethyl ether: hexanes mixture.

10

Scheme LVIII

$$R^5$$
 R^3
 R^5
 R^3
 R^5
 R^3
 15

20

Scheme LVIII is a method that involves using a Suzuki coupling to generate substituted acetophenones (Example 519, Table IIIa).

<u>235</u>

The compound 2'-Hydroxy-3'-bromo-5'methylacetophenone 233 (Example 509, Table IIIa) is synthesized from the acetophenone using the bromination procedure in Scheme LII.

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

 1 H NMR (DMSO- d_{6}) δ : 7.78 (d, 1 H) 7.70 (d, 1 H) 2.64 (s, 3 H) 2.26 (s, 3 H).

2'-Hydroxy-3'-bromo-5'methylacetophenone 233 (0.46 g, 2 mmol) and phenylboronic acid (0.24 g, 1 eq.) are dissolved in DME (10 ml) and placed under a nitrogen atmosphere. Na₂CO₃ (0.50 g, 3 eq.) in water (10 ml) is added, followed by Pd(Ph₃)₄ (0.12 g, 0.05 eq.) and the reaction mixture heated to 75°C for 12-18 h. Most of the DME is removed in vacuo and the reaction mixture is diluted with ether, washed with water, brine, and dried (MgSO4), and concentrated in vacuo to give an oil. Purification by flash chromatography (5/95 EtOAc/hexanes) afforded 2'-Hydroxy-3'-phenyl-5'methylacetophenone 234 as a yellow solid (0.32 g, 71% yield) (Example 519, Table IIIa).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 7.79 (d, 1 H) 7.53 (dd, 2 H) 7.46-7.30 (m, 4 H) 2.70 (s, 3 H) 2.33 (s, 3 H).

Alternatively 2'-Hydroxy-3'-bromo-5'methylacetophenone 233 can be treated as follows: LDA (20 mL, 1.5 M) is slowly added to a THF solution of 233 at about 0° and the reaction mixture is then cooled to about -78° followed by the addition of bromo acetonitrile (40 mmol). This resulting reaction mixture is stirred for 12-18 h at -78° and is then quenched with 1N HCl followed by extraction with ether. The ether layer is washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to yield an oil. This oil is purified by flash chromatography (4:1; hexanes:ethyl acetate) to yield 1 g of 235. (Example 517, Table IIIa)

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ ppm: 12.3 (s, 1H), 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.5 9s, 1H), 3.45 (t, 2H, J=7.14 Hz), 2.8 (t, 2H, J=7.3 Hz), 2.33 (s, 3H).

Scheme LVIX

25

5

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Acetyl chloride (14.7 ml, 5 eq.) is added slowly to an ice cooled suspension of AlCl₃ (27.7 g, 5 eq.) in dry CH₂Cl₂ (125 ml). The reaction is stirred until most of the solid is dissolved, then 5-methyl salicylic acid <u>236</u> (6.31 g, 41 mmol) is added. The reaction is stirred at 0°C for 1.5 hr, then at room temperature for 1.5 hr. The reaction is poured onto ice, diluted with Et ₂O, and washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO4). Concentration in vacuo afforded a slowly crystallizing oil. Recrystallization (CH₂Cl-₂/hexanes) yielded pure 3-Acetyl-5-methyl salicylic acid (Example 529, Table IIIa) as 3.29 g of off white powder (41% recrystallized yield).

¹H NMR (CDCL₃) δ : 8.22 (d, J = 1.88, 1 H) 7.80 (d, J = 1.98, 1 H).

Aldehyde compounds useful in the synthesis of Indole based compounds of Formula I are commercially acailable. They can also be prepared by schemes LX(1) to LX(5) outlined below.

Scheme LX(1)

10

20

25

30

35

2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-biphenyl-3-carbaldehyde 240(a)

The above compound is prepared as outlined and discussed below:

3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde.

A mixture of 2-bromo-4-methylphenol (5.0 g, 27 mmoles), chloroform (50 ml), water (10 ml) and NaOH (10 g) was refluxed for 3 hrs. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, and then was acidified to pH = 2 with conc. HCl, diluted with ether (300 ml) and washed with 1N HCl (200 ml). The organic layer was dried (MgSO4), filtered and concentrated to yield a residue which was purified using flash chromatography (10% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 2.94 g (51%) of the title compound as a light yellow solid.

2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-biphenyl-3-carbaldehyde

A mixture of 3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methylbenzaldehyde (0.30 g, 1.40 mmoles), phenyl boronic acid (0.20 g, 1.67 mmoles) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (81 mg, 0.07 mmoles) in toluene (10 ml) and 2M K₂CO₃ (3 ml) was heated to 80 °C for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, diluted with ether (100 ml) and washed with NaHCO₃. The organic layer was dried (MgSO4), filtered and concentrated to yield a residue which was purified using flash chromatography (10% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 0.15 g (49%) of the title compound as a yellow oil.

The yellow oil then was treated with Benzyl bromide analogous to the procedure in Scheme VII above to yield the corresponding benzyl protected aldehyde.

Compounds analogous to 240(a) with different substituents can be prepared by following the procedure in Scheme LX(1) above.

Scheme LX(2)

25

10

[3-(2-Formyl-3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)-prop-2-ynyl]carbamic acid tert-butyl ester. 240(b)

A solution of 6-bromo-2-hydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde (0.60 g, 2.6 mmoles) and prop-2-ynylcarbamic acid tert-butyl ester (0.44. 2.9 mmoles) in triethylamine (10 ml) was mixed with tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (60 mg, 0.05 mmoles) and copper iodide (15 mg, 0.08 mmoles). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 30 minutes, cololed to ambient temperature, diluted (ethyl acetate 200 ml) and washed with 0.5N HCl (50 ml). The organic layer was dried (MgSO4), filtered and concentrated to yield a residue which was purified by flash chromatography (30% ethyl acetate/hexanes) to yield 0.36 g (46%) of the title compound.

Compounds analogous to <u>240(b)</u> with different substituents can be prepared by following the procedure in Scheme LX(2) above.

Scheme LX(3)

2-Hydroxy-biphenyl-3-carbaldehyde **240(c)**

A solution of 2-Phenylphenol (300 mmol, 51 gr) and THF (400 mL) was mixed with triethylamine (3.5 eq, 145 ml) and magnesium dichloride (1.5 eq, 43 gm.). The preceeding

10

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

mixture then was mixed with paraformaldehyde (6.0 eq, 54 gr) in portions over 10 min. to avoid vigorous exotherm forming a yellow mixtue. The yellow mixture then was refluxed gently for 1.5 hours. A Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC) indicated a clean conversion to the more hydrophobic desired EtOAc/Hexane) $(R_s = 0.44)$ 20% and comsumption of the starting phenol. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath and then diluted with 3N HCl to adjust the pH to about 5. The acidified mixture then was extracted with ether or ethyl acetate, the combined organic layers were washed with water, brine, and dried (Na,SO,). The dried organic phase was concentrated to yield the title compound as an oil (54.6 gm., 92%).

HPLC , 254 nm, r.t.=8.8 min, 1-90% MeCN/ H_20 , 0.05% TFA). NMR (300Mhz, 1 H CDCl $_3$): δ 11.6 ppm (s, 1H),10.0 (s, 1H), 7.7 to 6.9 (m, 7H).

Compounds analogous to $\underline{240(c)}$ with different substituents can be prepared by following the procedure in Scheme LX(3) above.

Scheme LX(4)

The aldehyde $\underline{240(d)}$ was prepared using the procedure outlined in Scheme X above. Compounds analogous to $\underline{240(d)}$ with different substituents can be prepared by following the procedure in Scheme LX(4) above.

Scheme LX(5)

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

The 2,3-dihydroxy-benzaldehyde was treated with sodium hydride and MEM-chloride under conditions analogous to the benzylation procedure in Scheme VII to yield 250 mg, mmol of the protected alcohol, which then was mixed with a DMF solution of Morpholino 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzenesulfoanmide (306 mg, 1 mmol) and the resulting mixture was heated for about 8-12 hours at about 80°C. The reaction mixture then was cooled to ambient temperature, diluted with ethyl actetae and washed with saturdated sodium hydrogen carbonate (2x) followed by brine (1x). combined organic layers were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield a crude oily mixture. The crude was purfied by passing through over silica gel eluting with 30% ethyl acetate in hexanes to give the product (120 mg) 24%.

Compounds analogous to $\underline{240(e)}$ with different substituents can be prepared by following the procedure in Scheme LX(5) above.

Table IIIa lists ketones, that can be used as precursors to make compounds of Formula I, as illustrated in Scheme LXII for the general Fischer-Indole synthesis below. It should be noted that R^{20a} generally comprises an extra methylene group than R^{20} , thus one can represent R^{20a} as CH_a-R^{20} .

Table IIIa

wherein R^1 represents OH, and R^5 represents H.

EX.	Sche	R²	R³	R ⁴	R ^{20a}
No.	me				
500	LIII	Br	H	CH ₂ COO	CH,CH,Ph
				Н	
501	LII	Br	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ C	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
				OOH	
502	LV	Br	Н	CH ₃	CH,CH,(p- nitro)Ph
503		Br	Н	Br	CH,CH,Ph
504	LVI	C1	Н	CH,	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
505	LI	F	Н	F	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
506	LIII	Br	H	CH ₂ COO	CH ₃
		_		Н	
507		Н	Н	Cl	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
508	LIII	Br	Н	CH ₂ CN	CH ₃
509	LVII	Br	H	CH ₃	CH,
	I				
510	LVI	C1	Н	CH ₃	CH ₃
511	comm	Cl	Н	C1	CH ₃
512	LVII	Br	Н	CN	CH ₃
513	LVII	CH ₃	Н	CH,	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
	I				

No. me Br H F H H F H H F H H ST CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3CH3C	EX.	Sche	R^2	R ³	R ⁴	R ^{20a}
S15	No.	me				
Side	514	comm	F	Н	F	Н
Side	515		Br	Н	Br	CH ₂ CH ₃
Total Ne	516	LVII		Н	CH ₃	
I S18 COMM Br H Br CH3 519 LVII Ph H CH3 CH3 520 LIV Ph H H CH3 521 LVII C1 H H CH2CH2Ph I S22 Br H Nitro CH3 523 COMM H H H CH3 CH3 524 COMM H H CH3 CH3 525 LVI CH3 H CH3 CH3 526 LVII P- H CH3 CH3 527 COMM H H Br CH3 528 COMM H H CH3 CH3 529 LVIX COOH H CH3 CH3 530 COMM H H H CH3 CH3 531 COMM H H H CH3 CH3 532 LVII Br H CH3 CH3 533 COMM C1 H CH3 CH3 534 LV Br H Me CH2CH2(M-nitro)Ph 535 COMM OCH2-R3 OC H CH3 536 COMM OCH3-R3 OC H CH3 537 COMM C1 H M CH3 CH3 538 COMM C1 H C1 CH3 539 LVII Br H Me CH2CH2(M-nitro)Ph 530 COMM C1 H C1 CH3 531 COMM C1 H C1 CH3 533 COMM C1 H C1 CH3 534 LV Br H Me CH2CH2(M-nitro)Ph		I				
S18 COMM Br H Br CH,	517	LVII		Н	CH ₃	CH ₂ CH ₂ CN
519 LVII Ph H CH, 520 LIV Ph H H CH, 521 LVII Cl H H CH,CH,Ph I Br H nitro CH, 522 Br H nitro CH, 523 Comm H H H Cl CH, 524 Comm H H H CH, 525 LVI CH, H CH, 526 LVII P- H CH, I toluyl 527 Comm H H Br CH, 528 Comm H H CH, 529 LVIX COOH H CH, 530 Comm H H H CH, 531 Comm H H H CH, 532 LVII Br H CH, 533 Comm Cl H CH, 534 LV Br H Me CH, 61, 61, 61, 61, 61, 61, 61, 6		I				
I 520 LIV Ph H H H CH ₃ 521 LVII Cl H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I 522 Br H nitro CH ₃ 523 comm H H H Cl CH ₃ 524 Comm H H Cl CH ₃ 525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ 526 LVII P- H CH ₃ CH ₃ I toluyl CH ₃ 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₃ 533 comm Cl H CH ₃ CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro)Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R ²	518	comm	Br	H	Br	CH ₃
520 LIV Ph H H H CH ₃ 521 LVII Cl H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 522 Br H nitro CH ₃ 523 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 524 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ CH ₃ 526 LVII p- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ (M ₂ -1) 533 comm Cl H Me	519	LVII	Ph	Н	CH ₃	CH ₃
521 LVII C1 H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 522 Br H nitro CH ₃ 523 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 524 comm H H Cl CH ₃ 525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ CH ₃ 526 LVII P- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 533 comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph		I		İ		
Second S		LIV	Ph	Н	Н	CH ₃
522 Br H nitro CH ₃ 523 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 524 comm H H Cl CH ₃ 525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ CH ₃ 526 LVII p- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 533 comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃	521	LVII	Cl	Н	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
523 comm H H H H CH2CH2Ph 524 comm H H Cl CH3 525 LVI CH3 H CH3 CH3 526 LVII P- H CH3 CH3 527 Comm H H Br CH3 528 comm H H CH3 CH3 529 LVIX COOH H CH3 CH3 530 comm H H H CH3 531 comm H H H CH2CH3 532 LVII Br H CH3 CH2CH2Ph 533 comm Cl H Cl CH3 534 LV Br H Me CH2CH2(m-nitro)Ph 535 comm OCH2-R3 OCH3 H CH3 CH3		I				
524 comm H H Cl CH ₃ 525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ CH ₃ 526 LVII p- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 533 comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃	522		Br	Н	nitro	CH ₃
525 LVI CH ₃ H CH ₃ CH ₃ 526 LVII p- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 Comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 Comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 531 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 533 Comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 Comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R ³	523	comm	Н	Н	Н	CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph
526 LVII p- H CH ₃ CH ₃ 527 Comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 Comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 531 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₂ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I I CH CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 Comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R ³	524	comm	Н	Н	Cl	CH ₃
I toluyl 527 comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₃ 533 comm Cl H Cl CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph The CH ₃	525	LVI	CH ₃	Н	CH ₃	CH ₃
527 Comm H H Br CH ₃ 528 Comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 Comm H H H CH ₃ 531 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I I H CI CH ₃ 533 Comm CI H CI CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 Comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H ₂ -R H CH ₃	526	LVII	p-	Н	CH,	CH ₃
528 comm H H CH ₃ CH ₃ 529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I I CI CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph 533 comm Cl H Cl CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃		I	toluyl			
529 LVIX COOH H CH ₃ CH ₃ 530 comm H H H CH ₃ 531 comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I 533 comm Cl H Cl CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃	527	comm	Н	Н	Br	CH ₃
530	528	comm	Н	Н	CH ₃	CH ₃
531 Comm H H H CH ₂ CH ₃ 532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I 533 Comm Cl H Cl CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 Comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃	529	LVIX	СООН	H	CH,	CH ₃
532 LVII Br H CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ Ph I 533 comm Cl H Cl CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃		comm	Н	Н	Н	CH ₃
I 533 comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m- nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃		comm	Н	H	Н	CH ₂ CH ₃
533 comm C1 H C1 CH ₃ 534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃	532	LVII	Br	Η.	CH,	CH,CH,Ph
534 LV Br H Me CH ₂ CH ₂ (m-nitro) Ph 535 Comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃		I				
535 comm OCH ₂ -R ³ OC H CH ₃ H ₂ - R ²		comm	Cl	H	Cl	CH ₃
$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$		LV		Н	Me	
	535	comm	OCH ₂ -R ³		H	
				R ²		·
	535	comm	Cl		Н	CH ₃

5

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Synthesis of aryl hyrdazines which are useful in the preparation of indole based compounds of Formula I in the Fischer-Indole synthesis discussed below.

Most of the aryl hydrazines are prepared using the procedure of Castro et al., J. med. Chem., 1994, Vol. 37, No. 19, p 3030 from commercially available materials. In the case of the chloro substituted hydrazine used in the synthesis of Example 839, Table III the following scheme is used.

Scheme LXI

NC

$$R^6$$
 Me_3Al/NH_4Cl
 R^8
 R^8
 R^6
 $R^$

$$H_2N$$
 H_2
 NH
 NH_2
 R^6
 NH
 NH_2
 R^7

wherein R^s is Cl; R^s and R^s are as defined in the detailed description.

To a p-xylenes solution of the nitrile <u>255</u> (0.5 g, 3.3 mmol) is added a freshly prepared solution of Me₃Al/NH₄Cl (16 ml, 3 eq.). (Me₃Al/NH₄Cl solution can be prepared by adding 5g of ammonium chloride to p-xylenes (100ml) at 0°C, then adding a 2M solution of trimethylaluminum in toluene (48 ml) over 10 min. This mixture is stirred for 12-18 h as it is warmed up to ambient temperature. This mixture is

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

refluxed for 24 h, allowed to stand for 2 days and is then poured onto chloroform/silica gel. Filtration is followed with 50% by washing methanol/chloroform and then evaporation οf the filtrates gives a yellow oil. Purification is performed using reverse phase HPLC to give This compound is then subjected to the same general procedure as noted above for the preparation of hydrazines from anilines.

10 General Fisher-Indole Synthesis of Indoles in Table III Scheme LXII

Compounds of Formula in which 'A' is optionally substituted 1H-indol-2-yl and 'B' is optionally substituted

phenyl can be prepared by methods illustrated by Scheme LXII.

For example, a solution of 1-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitro-phenyl)-propan-1-one **201** (1.48 g, 0.004 mol), EtOH (30 mL), diisopropylethylamine (Hunigs base)(3 mL), and 4-Hydrazino-benzamidine **200** (0.93 g, 0.004 mol) is heated at reflux for 4 hr. (reaction times can vary between 2 h to 18 h). The solution is cooled to ambient temperature, filtered, washed with 6N HCl (2x25 mL), and dried for 12-18 h in a vacuum oven to give a 90% yield of 4-{N'-[1-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitro-phenyl)-propylidene]-hydrazino}-benzamidine **202** as an off-white solid (1.78 g, 0.0036 mol).

MS (ESI) Calc for C₂₃H₂₂BrN₅O₃: 495.1, Found: MH+ 496.1.

15

20

25

10

Example 841, Table III: A mixture of 4-{N'-[1-(3-bromo-2hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitro-phenyl)-propylidene]hydrazino}-benzamidine 202 (0.30 g, 0.0006 mol) and PPA (5 mL) was heated at 130°C (temperature may vary between 125 -180 °C) for 30 min (reaction times may vary between 30 minutes - 4 h). The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and cold H,O (5 mL) was added to produce a precipitate. The precipitate was washed and taken up in Purification by reverse HPLC 0.1N HCl. (0.01%HCl/acetonitrile) with a 2-90% gradient gave a yield of 2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine 203 as a white solid. (0.04 g, 0.08 mmol).

MS (ESI) Calc for $C_{23}H_{19}BrN_4O_3$: 478.08, Found: MH+ 479.4.

¹HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 11.84 (s, 1 H), 9.24 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 2 H), 8.70 (s, 2 H), 8.06 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 8.04 (s, 1 H), 7.60-7.56 (m, 2 H), 7.36 (s, 1 H), 7.34 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 6.03 (s, 1 H), 4.21 (s, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H).

35

3-(4-amino-benzyl)-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine (Example 803, Table III):

A mixture of 2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-3-(4-nitro-benzyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine 203 0.2 mmol), SnCl, (100 mgs) and 6N HCl is heated at reflux for 1 hr. The reaction is cooled, let stand for 12-18 h, residue is isolated. The residue is taken up in and the 0.1N HCl and purified by reverse phase (0.01%HCl/acetonitrile) with a 2-90% gradient to yield 42% 3-(4-amino-benzyl)-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methylphenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine as a white solid (38 mgs, 0.08 mmol).

Alternative synthesis of Indoles

Compounds of Formula I having an indole nucleus can also be synthesized using the procedure discussed in Scheme LXIII below.

25

10

15

20

30

35

10

15

Scheme LXIII

253

A solution of 2-iodo-benzoyl chloride (2.05 g, 7.7 mmol) in DCM (5.0 mL) is added over a period of 5 min to a stirring DCM solution containing 5-cyano-indole (1.0 g, 7.0 mmol), TEA (1.95 mL, 14 mmol), DMAP (100 mg, 0.8 mmol) at 0°C. The resulting solution is stirred for an additional 1 hZ at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture is then diluted with DCM (50 mL) and washed with H_2O (x3), and sat. NaHCO₃ (x3). The organics were then dried (Na₂SO₄), and concentrated in vacuo. The residue is recrystallized (EtOAc/Hexanes) to provide 2.14 g (82%) of 5-cyano-1-(2-iodo(carboxyphenyl))indole **250** as a white solid.

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ : 8.56 (d,1H, J = 4.5 Hz), 8.01 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.60 (t, 1H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.50 (d, 1H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.34

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

(t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 3.6 Hz), 6.73 (d, 1H, J = 3.6 Hz). MS (+CI, CH₄); m/z 373 (MH+), 245, 143.

A mixture of 5-cyano-1-(2-iodo(carboxyphenyl))indole **250** (1.0g,2.6mmol), Pd(OAc), (59 mg, 0.26 mmol), triphenylphosphine (120 mg, 0.52 mmol), Et,N (0.73 mL, 5.2 mmol), and LiCl (120 mg, 2.8 mmol), in CH,CN (20 mL) is refluxed under N₂ for 18 h. Upon cooling, **251** crystallizes out as yellow/green needles.

 1 H-NMR (300 Mhz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 8.07 (s, 1H), 7.84 (d, 2H, J = 10 8.1 Hz), 7.76 (d, 1H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.67 (t, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.47 (t, 1H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.02 (s, 1H). MS (+CI, CH₄); m/z 245 (MH+), 143.

Compound <u>251</u> (74 mg, 0.2 mmol) in MeOH (1.0 mL) is treated with KOH (1.0 mL, 40% aq) and heated to 60 °C for 30 min. The mixture is then cooled to ambient temperature and diluted with H_2O (10 mL). The aqueous solution is then acidified with HCl (6 N) to pH = 2.0. The resulting solid precipitate is isolated, washed with H_2O , and dried in vacuo to provide 70 mg of <u>252</u> (90%) as a white solid.

¹H-NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ: 8.05 (s, 1H), 7.80 (d, 1H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.55 (m, 2H), 7.44 (d, 1H), 6.65 (s, 1H). MS (Bioion) m/z 261.6 (MH+), 168.9.

Compound <u>252</u> (35 mg, 0.13 mmol) in EtOH (2.0 mL) is treated with NH₂OH (66 uL, 1.0 mmol, of a 50% soln. in H₂O) and refluxed for 16 h. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, and the residue is taken up in EtOH (4 mL). The ethanol solution is then treated with HCl (1.0 mL of a 4 N soln. in Dioxane) and heated to 60 °C. At this point Zn dust (65 mg, 1.0 mmol) is added and the reaction mixture is allowed to stir for 16 h at 60 °C. The resulting solution is then cooled and filtered. The filtrate is concentrated and purified by HPLC (C₁₈; H₂O/CH₃CN) to provide 15 mg (35%) of <u>253</u> (Example 836, Table III) as a white powder.

35 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 11.99 (s, 1H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 8.80 (s, 2H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 7.77 (d, 1H), 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.53 (m, 3H), 6.67 (s, 1H).

MS (+ESI): calcd. for $C_{15}H_{11}N_{12}O_{13}$; Found: m/z 280.1 (MH+).

Compounds <u>253</u> where R¹ represents a protected hydroxy group or other appropriate R¹ substituents and R⁴ represents OH can be derivatised at the R⁴ position by converting the hydroxy group to an alkyl hydroxy group with or without a functional group, as indicated in Scheme LXX below:

Scheme LXX

10

15

20

25

30

[5-(6-Chloro-5-cyano-1-methansulfonyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-(2-methoxyethoxymethoxy)biphenyl-3-yloxy]acetic acid ethyl ester 260

A mixture of 6-chloro-2-[5-hydroxy-2-(2-methoxymethoxymethoxy) biphenyl-3-yl]-1-methansulfonyl-1H-indole-5-carbonitrile (7.0 g, 13 mmoles) and K₂CO₃ (5.5 g, 23 mmoles) in acetonitrile (200 ml), was mixed with NaI (0.5 g) and bromoethyl acetate (1.6 ml, 14 mmoles). The mixture was stirred for about 18 h at ambient temperature, concentrated, the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (400 ml) and washed with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO4), filtered and concentrated to afford 8.0 g (98%) of the title compound as a brown foam.

Removal of protecting mesyl group at teh R¹ position was accomplished by mehtods known to one skilled in the art. Compounds where R⁴ represent a substituent comprising a carboxylic acid group can be converted to corresponding amides using the procedures outlined in of Scheme C above.

20

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Compounds of Formula I wherein R^{β} represents a halo group can be synthesized as outlined in Scheme LXXI below:

Scheme LXXI

5

(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-acetic acid methyl ester

4-Hydroxyphenylacetic acid (126 mmol, 19.2g) was dissolved in MeOH (400 ml) and the resulting mixture was cooled in an ice bath (0°C) under under N_2 atmosphere. The cooled reaction mixture was saturated with HCl (gas) and the reaction mixture then was refluxed for 2 h or until all the stating material was completely consumed. The reactin mixture was concentrated and the resulting residue was dissolved in ether, washed with water, brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated to yield a light colored oil (24.7 g). The purity of this crude material was 95% by HPLC and underwent no further purification prior to the next step.

HPLC (254 nM, r.t.= 7.1 min., 1-90% MeCN/ H_20 , 0.05% TFA)

NMR (^{1}H -300MHz, DMSO- d_6): δ 7.1 (d, 2H), 6.7 (d, 2H), 6.0 (bs, 1H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 3.5 (s, 2H).

25

35

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

(3-Formyl-4-hydroxy-ph nyl)-acetic acid methyl ester (3)

The methyl ester from above (126 mmol, 21g) was dissolved in acetonitrile (650 mL) to form a solution. This solution was mixed with triethylamine (3.4 eq, 60 ml), magnesium dichloride (1.6 eq, 19.7 g), paraformaldehyde in several portions (6.8 eq, 26 gr) to form a yellow mixture. The yellow mixture was refluxed for 3.5 hours at which time TLC revealed that all the starting material was consumed. The reaction mixture was acidified with 6 N HCl, concentrated and extracted with ether (3x150 ml). The ether extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (Na $_2$ SO $_4$) and concentrated to yield 23.6g (96%) of crude product.

NMR (1 H, DMSO- 2 d₆): δ 10.6 (s, 1H), 10.4 (s, 1H), 7.5 (s, 1H), 7.4 (d, 1H), 6.9 (d, 1H), 3.62 (s, 2H), 3.59 (s, 3H).

(3-Bromo-5-formyl-4hydroxy-phenyl)-acetic acid methyl ester (4)

The salicylaldehyde from above (122 mmol, 23.6 g) was dissolved in 120 ml acetic acid. Bromine (1.9 eq, 12 ml) was added drop wise over 30 minutes and the dark solution stirred overnight under N_2 . Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, the residue dissolved in ether, washed with water followed by brine. The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield an oil (32.2 g) (97%).

30 NMR (1 H, DMSO) : δ 11.1(bs, 1H), 10 (s, 1H), 7.8 (s, 1H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 3.7 (s, 2H), 3.6 (s, 3H).

[3-Bromo-5-formyl-4-(2-methoxy-ethoxymethoxy)-phenyl]-acetic acid methyl ester (5)

A solution of the aryl bromide (4) (118 mmol, 32.2 g) was dissolved in chloroform (550 mL) was mixed with DIPEA

N

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

(2.35 eq, 48 ml) followed by rapid drop wise addition of MEM-Cl (2-Methoxy-ethoxymethyl chloride, 1.19 eq, 16 ml). The resulting reaciton mixture was stirred for 8-12 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and diluted with ether. The ether mixture was washed with 0.5 M KHSO₄ followed by saturated NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic phase was dried (Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give a crude oil (43.2g) 91% pure by HPLC, no further purification performed.

10 HPLC 254 nm, r.t. = 8.0 min., 1-90% MeCN/H₂O, 0.05% TFA). NMR (1 H, CDCl₃): δ 10.3 (s, 1H), 7.8 (s, 1H), 7.7 (s, 1H), 5.3 (s, 2H), 3.9 (d, 2H), 3.65 (s, 2H), 3.5 (d, 2H), 3.4 (s, 3H).

[5-formyl-6-(2-methoxy-ethoxymethoxy)-biphenyl-3-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester (6)

The arylbromide (5) (118 mmol, 42.6 gr) was dissolved in about 430 ml of toluene in a 1 L flask to which 150 ml of 2M K_2CO_3 was added followed by 5.0 g (0.037 eq) of $Pd(PPh_3)_4$. After the addition of phenylboronic acid (2.0 eq, 29 gr) the flask was heated to $70^{\circ}C$ and the mixture stirred for 5 hours. HPLC of the reaction mixture indicated that the arylbromide had completely reacted and a dominant less polar moiety (89% pure, r.t.= 8.5 min., 1-90% $MeCN/H_2O$, 0.1% TFA) was observed.

The organic layer from the reaction mixture was isolated, concentrated and diluted with ether. The ether mixture was washed with water, brine and dried with Na₂SO₄. The resulting organic layer was concentrated and the residue obtained was purified by silica gel column, 30% EtOAc/Hexane to yield 23.7g, 66% of the title compound.

NMR (1 H, DMSO-d₆): δ 10.3 (s, 1H), 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.5-7.3 (m, 5H), 4.8 (s, 2H), 3.8 (s, 2H), 3.6 (s, 2H), 3.4 (d, 2H), 3.2 (d, 2H), 3.1 (s, 3H). MS: (ESI ,Sciex) m/z = 357.4

[5-(6-Chloro-5-cyano-1-methanesulfonyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-(2-methoxy-ethoxymethoxy)-biphenyl-3-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester (15)

5

See general Scheme X using the above aldehyde 6

NMR(1 H, DMSO-d₆): δ 8.4 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.6-7.3 (m, 7H), 6.9 (s, 1H), 4.6 (s, 2H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 3.65 (s, 2H), 3.25 (s, 2H), 3.2 (s, 3H), 3.0 (b, 1H). MS: (ESI, Sciex): m/z = 579

[5-(6-Chloro-5-cyano-1-methanesulfonyl-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxy- biphenyl-3-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester (16)

15

10

The indole (15) was dissolved in 80 ml methanol treated with 80 ml of 4 N HCl/dioxane at ambient temperature for about 2h. TLC analysis indicated that all the starting material was consumed and a new product had formed ($R_{\rm f}=0.30$, 40% EtOAc/ Hexane). Volatiles were removed by rotary evaporation, the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate which was washed three times with water followed by brine. After drying with Na $_2$ SO $_4$, concentration gave a crude residue of 3.8g, 84% pure by HPLC (254 nm).

25

NMR (1 H, DMSO-d₆): δ 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.9 (s, 1H), 7.6-7.4 (m, 7H), 7.3 (s, 1H), 6.7 (s, 1H), 3.7 (s, 3H), 3.6 (s, 2H), 3.3 (s, 3H). MS: (ESI, Sciex): M = 495.

30

[5-(6-Chloro-5-cyano-1H-indol-2-yl)-6-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl]-acetic acid (17)

The phenol (16) (4.3g, 8.7 mmol) was dissolved in 40 ml methanol and 15 ml water. To this was added 32 ml of 14 N NaOH (aq) and the solution was stirred for two hours at ambient temperature. HPLC indicated that all the starting

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

material was consumed and a new moiety had formed. The reaction mixture was diluted water (50 mL), acidified with 6 N HCl and extracted with EtOAC. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), brine and then dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated to yield a yellow solid, 3.0g, 87%.

HPLC r.t. =7.5 min. $(1-90\% \text{ MeCN/H}_20, 0.05\% \text{ TFA})$. MS: (ESI, Sciex): m/z = 403.2 (MH+)

10 {5-[6-Chloro-5-(N-hydroxycarbamimidoyl)-1H-indol-2-yl]-6hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl}-acetic acid (18)

A solution of the cyano indole (17) (0.365 gr, 0.91 mmol) from above in dry EtOH (5 ml) was treated with an excess of Hydroxylamine (5 ml of 50 wt. % solution in water). The resulting reaction mixture was refluxed for 10h. The solvent was removed by rotary evaporation, the residue was azeotroped with toluene to yield the title title compound (0.3-0.4g).

HPLC r.t. = 6.7 min., 1-90% MeCN/ H_2 0, 0.05% TFA). MS: (ESI, Sciex): m/z= 436 (MH+)

[5-(5-Carbamimidoy1-6-chloro-1H-indo1-2-y1)-6-hydroxy-bipheny1-3-y1]-acetic acid (19)

Acetic anhydride (1.1 eq, 0.77ml, in 7 ml of AcOH) was added drop wise to a stirring solution of 3g of 18 in 34 ml of acetic acid at ambient temperature under N_2 over several minutes. HPLC 15 minutes thereafter indicated formation of a hydrophobic product. A catalytic amount of Pd/C (10% w/w) was added to the reaction mixture and teh reaction vessel then was charged with H_2 (atm.). The reaction mixture was agitated for about 1.5h. The agitated reaction mixture was passed through a celite pad (rinsed with AcOH). The filtrate was diluted with ethyl acetate to yield a

10

precipitate. The colid was isolated and dried in vacuo to yield 2.05g of the crude amdidine.

MS: (ESI, Sciex): m/z=419

2-[5-(5-Carbamimidoyl-6-chloro-1H-inol-2-yl)-6-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl]-N, N-dimethyl-acetamide

The compound (19) from above (87 mg, 0.18 mmol) was combined with dimethylamine HCl (82 mg, 1.9 eq), EDC (425 mg, 1.2 eq), HOBTH₂O (300 mg, 1.2 eq) and DIPEA (0.45 ml, 1.4 eq) in 15 ml DMF. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight. A new moiety was observed by HPLC which LC.MS.ESI (Sciex) confirmed as the product having a mass of 447 A solution of 9:1 EtOAc / ether was added to the reaction mixture to afford a precipitate. The precipitated solid was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC (2-90% MeCN/ H₂O in 40 min., 20 mM HCl) to yield the title compound (88 mg) (11% yield).

20

N

Another method to make compounds of Formula I listed in Table III is depicted in Scheme LXXIII below:

Scheme LXXIII

25

X= Cl or F, R₂ = Mes or BOC

<u> 260</u>

<u> 263</u>

264

30

25

35

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

6-Chloro-2-[2-(2-methoxy-ethoxymethoxy)-biphenyl-3-yl]-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine 260

The cyano-indole was dissolved in 300 ml dry EtOH in a 1 L flask fitted with a drying tube. Twenty (20) equivalents of hydroxylamine HCl (54g) and K₂CO₃ (107g) were added and the mixture refluxed overnight. The product was observed by HPLC as was a significant amount of the starting indole. An additional 10 eq of both hydroxylamine HCl and K₂CO₃ were added and the reaction mixture refluxed for an additional 8-12h. HPLC indicated the reaction had progressed, with about 5% of the starting material remaining. The solid was separated and the filtrate concentrated to yield residue. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water, the organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield compound 260.

LC.MS.ESI (Sciex): m/z = 466HPLC (r.t.= 7.46 min, 254 nm, 1-90% MeCN/H₂0, 0.05% TFA)

6-Chloro-2-[2-(2-methoxy-ethoxymethoxy)-biphenyl-3-yl]-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine <u>262</u>

Compound <u>260</u> was dissolved in AcOH (50 ml) and diluted with acetic anhydride. After about an hour the formation of compound <u>262</u> was observed. The reduction of the acetylated hydroxyamidine was performed in situ by addition of 2g (0.05 eq) of Pd/C (palladium on activated carbon, 5% dry weight) and charging the flask with H₂ (1 atm). After six hours amidine formation was observed. The reaction mixture was passed through a celite pad, the clear filtrate concentrated to a residue which was purified by silica gel column (5% MeOH/ 2.5% AcOH / DCM to 10% MeOH/ 5% AcOH / DCM), the pure fractions concentrated to give 6.0 g (35%) of product <u>263</u>.

6-Chloro-2-(2-hydroxy-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine, 264

The product $\underline{263}$ (13.3 mmol) was dissolved in 50 ml of dry MeOH and 50 ml of anhydrous 4 M HCl/dioxane at r.t. under N₂. After agitating the reaction mixture for about an hour, the starting material was consumed and product formatin was observed by HPLC at r.t. = 7.25 min (254 nm, 1-90% MeCN/ H₂0, 0.05% TFA). The solvent was removed under reduced pressure, to yield a foamy oil. The foamy oil was diluted with 0.5 m HCl (aq) to from a precipitate. The precipitated solid was isolated and dried to yield the title compound (2.7 g).

15

10

F	R _s	- RE
R ₂₀ R ₅		ZI
<u>~</u>	├ ── ⟨ ├ ── ⟨	<u> </u>
E.		` œ

\mathbb{R}^{20}	benzyl	benzyl	4-amino- benzyl	benzyl	benzyl	benzyl	Н
_е ж	Н	H	Н	н	H	H	Н
్జిద	Н	н	Ħ	H	H	H	Н
'ጸ	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂
°ж	н	н	Ħ	н	н	H	Н
žx	н	H	Н	Н	н	Н	н
្នឹដ	СН ₂ СОО Н	(СН ₂), СООН	CH ₃	Br	СН,	Ŀ	сн,соон
_[ж	н	Ħ	н	H	H	H	н
R ²	Br	Br	Br	Br	C]	ĹΈų	Br
_R	НО	но	НО	НО	НО	но	ЮН
EX.	801	802	803	804	805	908	807

		\top				Т		_	_	_		_		_						
R ²⁰		benzyl	H		H	H	H	Н	benzyl	Н	СН,	H	CH, CONH,	H	H	H	benzyl	H	benzy]	H
R	<u> </u>	H	H		H	H	H	H	H	н	Н	H	H	H	Н	H	н	Н	H	н
R		H	H		田	H	H	H	Ħ	H	H	Н	H	H	н	H	H	Н	Н	Н
Έ,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	$C (=NH) NH_2$	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂
ጼ		н	H		н	Н	Н	H	H	н	E	E	Ħ	H	H	H	H	H	H	н
Rž		н	H		H	Ħ	H	H	H	Н	H	H	н	н	H	H	H	H	H	Н
R		CI	CH,CON	H,	CH,	СН	C1	CONH2	СН,	Ŀı	Br	СН,	СН	Br	CH ₃	H	н	nitro	Н	C1
R	,	Н	H		Н	н	H	H	ж	H	H	H	Н	H	Н	H	н	Н	H	Н
\mathbb{R}^2		Н	Br		Br	C]	C1	Br	СН	ĮΣų	Br	thiophe n-3-yl	Br	Br	Ph	Ьh	C]	Br	H	Н
\mathbb{R}^{1}		ЮН	НО		ОН	ОН	ОН	но	НО	ОН	ЮН	НО	но	НО	но	но	НО	НО	НО	ЮН
EX.	No.	808	808		810	811	812	813	814	815	816	817	818	819	820	821	822	823	824	825

_			_				_		_				_								
\mathbb{R}^{20}		сн,соон	H	H		Н	H		н		H	methy1	H		H		Н		benzyl	Н	н
R		H	Н	Н		Н	Н		Н		H	Н	Н		H		н		H	Н	н
ሜ		Н	H	H		H	н		Н		Н	Н	Н		H		H		H	н	Cl
R,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	1	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH2	•	C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂		$C(=NH)NH_2$	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂
R°		Ħ	Ħ	Ħ		H	н		H		Ħ	н	Н		H	,	Н		н	[2]	н
, R		H	н	H		H	H	_	Н		н	Н	Н		H		Н		н	H	Н
R		СН	CH,	methy	٦	Br	methy	Н	methy	П	н	Н	Н		Н		H		СН	C1	C1
ĘK.		H	H	Н		H	Н		Ħ		н	H	Н		H		н		H	H	H
R²		Br	СН	-ď	toluyl	н	н		нооэ		Н	Н	НО		Ethoxy		н		Br	CI	C1
R		НО	но	НО		ЮН	ЮН		но		ЮН	но	၀၁	НО	8	ЮН	හ	НО	НО	НО	ЮН
EX.	No.	826	827	828		829	830		831		832	833	834		835	٠	836		837	838	839

		T	T				Т-				
R ²⁰		н	p- nitrobenz	-m	nitrobenz	y1	Н	щ	н	н	н
R,		H	Ħ	Н			H	н	H	н	н
R		н	Ħ	н			H	н	C(=N H)NH	c1	C]
R,	٠	NHC (=NH) N H ₅	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂			C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	Н	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂
R°	-	Н	H	H				н	H	Н	Н
Rž		н	Н	H			Н	н	н	н	Н
R		н	Же	Me			Н	ш	Ме	н	2- Piperidin- 1-y1- ethylcarba moyl)- methyl
R		Ħ		Ħ			CH ₂ -0	4- ylo xy- ben zam idi	Н	сн, С	н
\mathbb{R}^2		Ph	Br	Br			O-CH ₂ -CI	н	Br	Ph	Ph
[א		НО	НО	но			HO	ж	ЮН	но	НО
EX.	No.	840	841	842			843	844	845	846	847

$\mathbb{R}^{^{20}}$		Н	Н	*	Н		-	Н	H		H			н	н			Н		
R³		н	Н		Н		:	Н	Н		Н			H	Ħ			н		
Rª		C1	CI		c1		5	CI	CJ		c1			C]	C1			C1		
Κ,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂			$C (=NH) NH_2$	$C (=NH) NH_2$		$C (=NH) NH_2$			C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂			C (=NH) NH ₂		
R		Н	Н		Н			H	I		н			Ħ	Ħ			н		
R³		н	Н		Н		;	Н	H		Н			н	Н			Н		
R.		Benzylcarb amoyl- methl-yl	2- Morpholin -4-yl-	ethylcarb amoyl)- methyl	2- Propionyl	amino- succinic	acid-1-y1	CH,CON(C,),	CH2CONH-	(СН ₂) 3-ОМе	2-(5-	carboxy-	pencylcard amoyl)- ethylamino	CH,CONH,	[Bis-(2- methoxy-	ethyl)-	carbamoy1]-methy1	2- Hydroxymet	pyrrolidin	oxo-eth-1- yl
ኤ		н	Н		Н			Н	H		Н			Ħ	H			н		
\mathbb{R}^2		Ph	Чď		Ph		7	Ph	Ьh		Ph			Ph	Ph			Ph		
		НО	но		но		į	ОН	ЮН		НО	·		НО	НО			НО		
EX.	No.	848	849		850		2.20	851	852		853			854	855			856		

		1			T			
\mathbb{R}^{20}		н	н	н	Н	н	н	H
ĘX.		H	Ξ.	н	Н	н	Ħ	Ħ
R		CI	CJ	Ü	[]	CI	C1	C1
R,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂
R°		Ħ	н	Ħ	н	н	н	н
ኤ		Н	п	Ħ	н	Ħ	H	Н
R		CH ₂ CONH- CH ₂ -CF ₃	Furan-2- ylmethyl- carbamoyl -meth-1- yl	Tetrahydro -furan-2- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl] -meth-1-yl	(1,1- Dioxo-1- thiomorph olin-4- yl)-2- oxo-eth- 1-vl	[(Benzo[1, 3]dioxol- 5- ylmethyl)- carbamoyl] -meth-1-yl	[2-(3H- Imidazol- 4-y1)- ethylcarb amoy1]- meth-1-y1	(2- Methoxy- 1-methyl- ethylcarb amoyl)-
		Ħ	н	н	ш	Н	Н	н
R²		Ph	Ph	Чd	ч	Ph	Ph	Ph
R.		НО	НО	НО	НО	НО	НО	НО
EX.	No.	857	8 2 8	859	860	861	862	863

															
R ²⁰	н	н	н		H	H	H	H	H	H	Н	H	H	H	H
,X	н	Ħ	н		H	H	E	E	H	H	H	H	H	E	H
R _e	C1	CJ	C1		C1	C1	C1	C1	C1	Cl	C1	C	CJ	CI	দ
,X	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂		C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH)NH2	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C(=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C(=NH)NH,	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH ₂
ů.	н	н	н		Н	н	H	H	H	E	Ħ	H	H	H	Н
,x	H	н	Ħ		Н	H	Н	Н	Ħ	Н	H	н	H	H	н
አ	thiophen-2- ylcarbamo ylmethyl	2-(4- Methyl- piperazin -1-yl)-2- oxo-ethyl	[(Pyridin -3- ylmethyl)	carbamoyl	H	Br	0- cvclohexvl	ОМе	осн,соон	Cl	OCH, CH, NH- acetyl	НО	осн,сн,соон	ОСН,СН,ОН	Н
<u></u>	н	н	H		Н	H	Н	Н	Н	Н	н	н	Н	H	н
R²	Ph	Ph	Ъh		Ph	Ъh	Ph .	Ph	Ph	Ъh	Ph	Ph	Ph	Ph	Чd
\mathbb{R}^1	ЮН	ЮН	НО		ЮН	НО	НО	НО	НО	НО	НО	ОН	НО	НО	НО
EX. No.	864	865	866		867	898	869	870	871	872	873	874	875	876	877

							·	·		,
\mathbb{R}^{23}		Н	Н	н	Н	н	Н	Н	H	H
ጼ፟		Н	н	Н	н	Ħ	н	н	н	Н
R.		F	Ħ	Ħ	Ĺτ	ĒΨ	[II.	Ēτ	Į±4	Į.
R,	,	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂
ሕ		Н	Н	н	Н	н	н	н	н	Н
R³		Н	Н	Н	Н	Н	H	Н	H	Н
R		осн,соон						ж	СН,СООН	CH, CON (Me),
آ <u>س</u>		Н	Н	Н	H	Н	Ħ	H	н	Н
R²		Чd	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy
R¹		но	НО	ЮН	но	НО	НО	НО	НО	ОН
EX.	No.	878	879	879	879	879	879	879	880	881

\mathbb{R}^{20}		н	H	Н	н	н	н	Н	н
R		н	н	н	н	H	н	H	н
R		Ē4	Ĺť	Ĺ	Ĺī.	<u> </u>	Į.	Ē4	[조-
R,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂
R,		Н	Ħ	Н	Н	Н	Ħ	H	Н
Rž		н	н	н	н	Ħ	н	呂	Н
₩		[bis-(2-methoxy-ethyl)-carbamoyl]	morpholin e-4- carbonyl	(2- Methoxy- ethylcarb amoyl)- methyl	CH ₂ -CONH-	CH2-CONH-	CH, CON- (CH, CH, OH),	4- hydroxy- piperidin e-1- carbonyl	thiomorph oline-4- carbonyl
r,		н	н	H	Н	н	Ħ	н	н
R²		2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy	2- Methyl- cyclohe xyloxy
R¹		ОН	НО	ОН	ОН	ЮН	но	но	НО
EX.	No.	882	883	884	882	988	887	888	888

			,					_	
\mathbb{R}^{20}		н	н	н	н	Ħ	Н	н	Н
R³		н	н	Н	н	н	н	Н	н
R		C1	C1	C1	c1	C1	C1	CJ	CI
R,		C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH2	C (=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH ₂	C (=NH) NH	C (=NH)NH2	C (=NH) NH ₂
, Ж		Н	н	Н	H	Н	н	H	Н
굓		н	н	н	н	н	н	Ħ	н
R.		methanesu lfonylami no- methoxy	benzoylam ino- methoxy	[(thiophe ne-2- carbonyl) -amino]- methoxy	[(morpholine-4- carbonyl) -amino]- methoxy	(4- chloro- benzenesu lfonylami no)- methoxy	нооз'нэо	OCH, COOEt	2- methoxy- ethoxycar bonylmeth oxy
R		Н	н	Н	Н	н	н	H	н
R²		Ph	Ph	ųа	чa	Ph	Чď	Ph	Ph
R.		ОН	НО	но	но	НО	но	НО	НО
EX.	No.	068	891	892	893	894	895	968	897

\mathbb{R}^{20}	H	Н	Н	Н	н
_ж	н	н	н	н	Н
_ي د	C1	C1	C1	C1	C1
. ''	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH) NH ₂	C (=NH)NH ₂
፟፟፟፟፟፟፟	H	Ħ	н	Н	Н
Т	H	Ħ	Ħ	ж	н
, T	OCH,CON (Me),	2- morpholin -4-yl-2- oxo- ethoxy	2-(4- hydroxy- piperidin -1-y1)-2- oxo- ethoxy	(1,2- dihydroxy- ethylcarba moyl)- methoxy	3- Hydroxy- 1-(2- hydroxy- ethyl)- propylcar bamoyl
ĽK	H	н	H	н	Н
R ²	Ph	чa	Ph	Ph	Ph
R.	НО	НО	НО	НО	НО
EX. No.	868	668	006	901	902

FLI

20

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Ex. 801

 1 H-NMR $(d_{s}$ -dmso) δ : 3.5 vbn3 9s, 2H), 4.04 (s, 2H), 7.05-7.22 (m, 7H), 7.49-7.55 (m, 2H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 8.77 (s, 2H), 9.21 (s, 2H), 9.42 (s, 1H), 11.75 (s, 1H), 12.33 (br.s, 1H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 477.8, Obs.: 478.3.

Ex. 802

10 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (d₆-dmso) δ : 9.32 (s, 1H), 9.14 (s, 2H), 8.74 (s, 2H), 8.08 (s, 1H), 7.5 (m, 4H), 7.11 (m, 6H), 4.09 (s, 2H), 2.69 (t, 2H, J= 7.4 Hz), 2.48 (t, 2H, J= 7.4 Hz). Mass (LRMS) M +1: Calculated: 491.08; Obs.: 492.7.

15 Ex. 803

¹HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 11.77 (s, 1 H), 9.24 (s, 1 H), 9.14 (s, 2 H), 8.75 (s, 2 H), 8.05 (s, 1 H), 7.56 - 7.52 (m, 2 H), 7.44 (s, 1 H), 7.04 - 7.15 (m, 5 H), 4.07 (s, 2 H), 2.2 (s, 3 H).

MS (ESI) Calc for C, H, BrN, O: 448.11, Found: MH+ 448.9

Ex. 804

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.8 (d, 1H, J = 2.41 hz), 7.58 (d, 1H, J = 10.18 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1H, J = 10.2 Hz), 7.32 (d, 1H, J = 2.41 Hz), 7.2-7.0 (m, 5H), 4.1 (s, 2H). Mass (ESI) M*+1: Calculated: 497.01, Obs.: 499.9.

Ex. 805

- 30 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 11.7 (s, 1H), 9.4 (s, 1H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.7 (s, 2H), 8.06 (br.s, 1H), 7.55 (dd, 1H, J = 8.57 Hz), 7.50 (d, 1H, J = 8.59 Hz), 7.28 (d, 1H, J = 1.52 Hz), 7.2-7.05 (m, 5H), 6.98 (d, 1H, J = 1.55 hz), 4.1 (s, 2H), 2.2 (s, 3H).
- 35 Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 389.88, Obs.: 390.1.

N

20

25

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

Ex. 807

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ $(d_{6}\text{-dmso})\delta$: 3.52 (s, 2H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.47-7.62 (d, 4H), 8.79 (s, 2H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 9.60 (br.s, 1H), 11.86 (s, 1H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 387.6, Obs.: 388.2.

Ex. 808

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (d₆-dmso) δ : 8.05 (s, 1H), 7.6-6.9 (m, 10H), 4.1 (s, 10 2H).

Mass (ESI) $M^{\dagger}+1$: Calculated: 375.11, Obs.: 375.9.

Ex. 809

 1 H-NMR (d_{6} -dmso) δ : 3.38 (s, 2H), 6.96 (s, 1H), 7.45-7.64 (m, 4H), 8.18 9s, 1H), 8.83 (s, 2H), 4.20 (s, 2H), 9.58 (br.s), 11.91 (s, 1H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 387.2, Obs.: 386.9.

Ex. 810 2-(3-Bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine

¹H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ : 9.16 (s, 2H), 8.70 (s, 2H), 8.14 (s, 1H), 7.61 (d, 1H, J = 8.66 Hz), 7.58 (d, 1H, J = 1.49 Hz), 7.54 (dd, 1H, J = 8.66 Hz), 7.41 9d, 1H, J = 1.24 Hz), 7.14 (s, 1H), 2.30 (s, 3H).

MS: 343.03(calc); 344 (obs.)

Ex. 811

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.7 (s, 1H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.8 (s, 2H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 7.6 (d, 1H, J=8.62 Hz), 7.57 (br.s, 1H), 7.52 (d, 1H, J=8.73 Hz), 7.24 (br.s, 1H), 7.16 (s, 1H), 2.3 (s, 3H).

Mass. (M'+1): Calculated: 299.08; Observed: 279.8.

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

EX. 812 2-(3,5-Dichloro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine

¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ : 8.14 (d, 1H, J = 1.7 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, J = 2.7 Hz), 7.63 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.57 (dd, 1H, J = 1.7, 8.1 Hz), 7.4 (d, 1H, J = 2.7 Hz), 7.25 (s, 1H).

MS: 319.0 (calc.); 319.7 (obs.).

Ex. 813

10 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ $(d_6\text{-dmso})\delta$: 12.1 (s, 1H), 10.21 (s, 1H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.8 (s, 2H), 8.32 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.1 (d, 1H, J = 1.98 Hz)8.05 (s, 1H), 7.6 (d, 1H), J = 8.56 Hz), 7.55 (dd, 1H, J = 8.67 Hz), 7.46 (s, 1H), 7.2 (s, 1H). Mass (ESI) M*+1: Calculated: 372.04, Obs.: 372.8.

15

Ex. 814

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR} \ (d_{6}\text{-dmso})\delta \ : \ 11.7 \ (\text{s}, \ 1\text{H}) \ , \ 9.1 \ (\text{s}, \ 2\text{H}) \ , \ 8.69 \ (\text{s}, \ 2\text{H}) \ , \\ 8.49 \ (\text{s}, \ 1\text{H}) \ , \ 8.0 \ (\text{s}, \ 1\text{H}) \ , \ 7.6\text{-}7.4 \ (\text{m}, \ 2\text{H}) \ , \ 7.2\text{-}7.0 \ (\text{m}, \ 5\text{H}) \ , \ 6.99 \ (d, \ 1\text{H}, \ J = 0.5 \ \text{Hz}) \ , \ 6.86 \ (d, \ 1\text{H}, \ J = 1.32 \ \text{Hz}) \ , \\ 4.1 \ (\text{s}, \ 2\text{H}) \ , \ 2.25 \ (\text{s}, \ 3\text{H}) \ , \ 2.15 \ (\text{s}, \ 3\text{H}) \ .$

Mass (ESI) $M^{+}+1$: Calculated: 369.46, Obs.: 370.1.

EX. 815 2-(3,5-Difluoro-2-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine

25

20

MS: 287.1 (calc.); 287.8 (obs.).

Ex. 816

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ $(d_{6}\text{-dmso})\delta$: 11.7 (s, 1H), 9.75 (s, 1H), 9.15 (s, 30 2H), 8.69 (s, 2H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 8.57 Hz), 7.55-7.4 (m, 2H), 2.25 (s, 2H). Mass (ESI) $\text{M}^{+}\text{+1}$: Calculated: 420.98, Obs.: 424.6.

Ex. 817 2-(2-Hydroxy-5-methyl-3-thiophen-2-yl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidin

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 9.12 (s, 2H), 8.70 (s, 2H), 8.11 (d, 1H, J = 1.68 Hz), 7.70-7.77 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.46 (m, 5H), 7.24 (d, 2H, J = Hz), 7.09 (s, 1H), 2.32 (s, 3H). MS: 347.11(calc); 348.0 (obs.).

Ex. 818

10 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (d₆-dmso) δ : 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.9 (s, 1H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.7 (s, 2H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.0-7.4 (m, 3H), 7.2 (s, 1H), 3.5 (s, 2H), 2.2 (s, 3H).

Mass (ESI) $M^{+}+1$: Calculated: 369.18, Obs.: 400.9.

15 **Ex. 819**

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ :12.0 (s, 1H), 10.0 (s, 1H), 8.8 (s, 2H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.95 (d, 1H, 2.38 Hz), 7.76 (d, 1H, J = 2.33 Hz), 7.60 (d, 1H, J = 8.44 Hz), 7.55 (d, 1H, J = 8.47 hz), 7.24 (s, 1H).

20 Mass (ESI) M'+1: Calculated: 406.97, Obs.: 409.8.

Ex. 821 2-(2-hydroxybiphen-3-yl)-5-amidinoindole hydrochloride

25 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 11.6 (s, 1H), 9.16 (s, 2H), 8.96 (s, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H), 7.74 (dd, 1H, J = 7.67 Hz), 7.64 (d, 1H, J = 8.66 hz), 7.57-7.35 (m, 5H), 7.25 (dd, 1H, J = 7.67 Hz), 7.12 (s, 1H), 7.11 (t, 1H, J = 7.67 Hz). MS: 327.14(calc.); 327.7 (obs.).

Ex. 822

 1 H-NMR (1 d₆-dmso) 1 8: 11.7 (s, 1H), 10.3 (s, 1H), 9.1 (s, 2H), 8.65 (s, 2H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 7.53 (m, 1H), 7.3-7.0 (m, 9H), 4.1 (s, 2H).

35 Mass (ESI) M*+1: Calculated: 375.11, Obs.: 376.0.

Ex. 823

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 7.28 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 8.19 (s, 1H), 8.39 (d, 1H, J = 1.2 Hz), 8.61 (d, 1H, J = 1 Hz), 8.84 (s, 2H), 9.21 9s, 2H), 12.3 (s, 1H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 375.2, Obs.: 375.6.

Ex. 825

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.8 (s, 2H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.85 (d, 1H, J = 1.64 Hz), 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 8.51 Hz), 7.52 (d, 1H, J = 8.45 hz), 7.25 (s, 1H), 7.3-7.2 (m, 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H, J = 8.73 Hz).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 265.12, Obs.: 285.8

15 **Ex. 826**

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ $(d_{6}\text{-dmso})\delta$: 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.2 (s, 2H), 8.7 (s, 2H), 8.2(s, 1H), 8.0-7.4 (m, 3H), 7.2 (s, 1H), 3.6 (s, 2H), 2.2 (s, 3H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 401.06, Obs.: 401.9.

20

N

Ex. 827

 1 H-NMR (1 d₆-dmso)δ: 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.16 (s, 2H), 8.85 (s, 2H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.6 (d, 8.58, J=8.58 Hz), 7.5 (d, 1H, J = 8.64 Hz), 7.4 (s, 1H), 7.1 (s, 1H), 6.9 (s, 1H), 2.24 (s, 3H).

25 Mass.: Calc. 279.14; Obs.: 279.8.

Ex. 828 2-(2-Hydroxy-5,4'-dimethyl-biphenyl-3-yl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.75 (s, 2H), 8.65 (s, 30 1H), 8.21 9s, 1H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H, J = 8.66 Hz), 7.54-7.51 (m, 2H), 7.43 (d, 2H, 2H), 7.27 (d, 2H, J = 7.67 Hz), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.04 (d, 1H, J = 1.73 Hz), 2.36 (s, 3H), 2.33 (s, 3H).

MS: 355.17(calc.); 356.1 (obs.).

25

35

Ex. 829

¹H NMR (D₆-DMSO) δ: 7.03 (d, 1H, J = 8.75), 7.25 (s, 1H), 7.34 (dd, 1H, J = 8.75, 2.3), 7.54 (dd, 1H, J = 8.59), 7.63 (d, 1H, J = 8.59), 7.98 (d, 1H, J = 2.3), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.86 (s, 2H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 10.76 (s, 1H), 11.84 (s, 1H).

Mass Bioion (M+H*): Calculated: 329.02; Obs.: 330.5.

Ex. 830

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 11.7 (s, 1H), 10.1 (s, 1H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.7 (s, 2H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.62 (d, 1H, J = 8.65 Hz), 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.5 (d, 1H, J = 8.64 Hz), 7.1 (s, 1H), 7.0 (d, 1H, J = 8.46 Hz), 6.9 (d, 1H, 8.0 hz), 2.25 (s, 3H). Mass (ESI) M*+1: Calculated: 265.12; Obs.: 265.9.

15 **Ex. 836**

 $^{1}\text{H-NMR}$ (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ : 11.99 (s, 1H), 9.18 (s, 2H), 8.80 (s, 2H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 7.77 (d, 1H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.53 (m, 3H), 6.67 (s, 1H). MS (+ESI); m/z 280.1 (MH+). calcd. for $C_{16}H_{14}N_{3}O_{2}$; m/z 280.1.

Ex. 837

 1 H-NMR $(d_{6}$ -dmso) δ : 11.8 (s, 1H), 9.25 (s, 1H), 9.15 (s, 2H), 8.7 (s, 2H), 8.08 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d, 1H, J = 8.46 Hz), 7.51 (d, 1H, J = 8.57 Hz), 7.44 (d, 1H, J = 1.25 Hz), 7.25 -7.05 (m, 5), 7.0 (d, 1H, J = 1.51 Hz), 4.1 (s, 2H), 2.22 (s, 3H).

Mass (ESI) M+1: Calculated: 433.10, Obs.: 434.0.

30 Ex. 841 3-(4-nitro-benzyl)-2-(3-bromo-2-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxamidine

¹HNMR (300 MHz, DMSO) δ : 11.84 (s, 1 H), 9.24 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 2 H), 8.70 (s, 2 H), 8.06 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 8.04 (s, 1 H), 7.60-7.56 (m, 2 H), 7.36 (s, 1 H), 7.34 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 6.03 (s, 1 H), 4.21 (s, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H).

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

MS (ESI) Calc for $C_{23}H_{19}BrN_4O_3$: 478.08, Found: MH+ 479.4.

Ex. 843

Mass (ESI) M*+1: Calculated: 309.1; Obs.: 309.7.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

UTILITY

Compounds of the present invention are useful as inhibitors of proteases, which play a significant role in the progression of cancer. Their inhibitory activity includes inhibition of urokinase (uPA) which has been postulated to have therapeutic value in treating cancer.

The compounds of this invention are also useful as anticoagulants for the treatment or prevention οf in mammals. thromboembolic disorders "thromboembolic disorders" as used herein includes arterial or venous cardiovascular or cerebrovascular thromboembolic disorders, including, for example unstable angina, first or recurrent ischemic attack, stroke, atherosclerosis, venous thrombosis, deep vein thrombosis, thrombophlebitis, arterial embolism, kidney embolisms, and embolisms. The anticoagulant effect of compounds of the present invention is believed to be due to the inhibition of Factor Xa (FXa), Factor VIIa (FVIIa), and thrombin.

Some of the compounds of the present invention show selectivity between uPA and FXa, with respect to their inhibitory properties. The effectiveness of compounds of the present invention as inhibitors of Urokinase and Factor Xa is determined using synthetic substrates and purified Urokinase and purified human Factor Xa respectively.

The rates of hydrolysis by the chromogenic substrates were measured both in the absence and presence of compounds of the present invention. Hydrolysis of the substrates result in the release of the -pNA moiety, which is monitored spectrophotometrically by measuring the increase in absorbance at 405 nano meter (nm). A decrease in the rate of absorbance change at 405 nm in the presence of a

inhibitor is indicative of enzyme inhibition. The results of this assay are expressed as the inhibitory constant, Ki app.

Factor Xa determinations were made in 50 mM Tris buffer, pH 7.5, containing 1M NaCl, 5 mM CaCl2, 0.05% Tween-20, and 1.5 mM EDTA. Values of Ki app. were determined by allowing 2-3 nM human Factor Xa (Haematologic Technologies, VT, USA) to react with the substrate (1 mM) in the presence of an inhibitor. Hydrolysis of the chromogenic substrate is followed spectrophotometrically at five minutes. 405 nm for The enzyme assay routinely yielded linear progression curves under these conditions. Initial velocity measurements calculated from the progress curves by a kinetic analysis program (Batch Ki; Peter Kuzmic, BioKin, Ltd., Madison, WI) were used to determine Ki app.

Urokinase inhibition determinations were made in 50 mM Tris (pH7.5), 150 mM NaCl, 0.05% Tween-20, 0.002% antifoam, and 1 mM EDTA. human Urokinase (from American Diagnostica, CT, USA). Values of Ki app. were determined by allowing 20 nM human Urokinase to react with the Pefachrome substrate (0.3 mM, Centerchem, CT, USA) in the presence of inhibitor. Hydrolysis of the chromogenic substrate is followed spectrophotometrically at 405 nm for enzyme assay routinely yielded linear minutes. The curves under these conditions. progression velocity measurements calculated from the progress curves by a kinetic analysis program (Batch Ki; Peter Kuzmic, BioKin, Ltd., Madison, WI) were used to determine Ki app.

Table IV lists inhibition constants (Ki app.) for representative compounds of the present invention. These values are for uPA and FXa.

25

10

15

20

25

Table IV

Ex.	uPA	FXa
	кі μм	кі μм
110	0.51	
116	0.651	
258		0.46
291	0.85	0.85
802	0.26	0.000618
820	0.065	0.298
877	2.5	0.033
860	0.004	5.4

<u>Definitions</u>

The compounds of the present invention may have Compounds of the present invention asymmetric centers. asymmetrically substituted atom may be an containing isolated in optically active or racemic forms. It is well known in the art how to prepare optically active forms, such as by resolution of materials. Many geometric isomers of olefins, C=N double bonds, and the like can be present in the compounds described herein, and all such stable isomers are contemplated in the present invention. Cis and trans geometric isomers of the compounds of the present invention are described and may be isolated as a mixture of isomers or as separated isomeric forms. All chiral, diastereomeric, racemic forms and all geometric isomeric forms of a structure (representing a compound of Formula I) intended, unless the specific stereochemistry or isomeric form is specifically indicated.

As used herein, the following terms and abbreviations have the following meaning, unless indicated otherwise.

15

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

The term "prodrug" is intended to represent covalently bonded carriers which are capable of releasing the active ingredient of Formula I, when the prodrug is administered to a mammalian subject. Release of the active ingredient Prodrugs can be prepared by techniques occurs in vivo. known to one skilled in the art. These techniques generally modify appropriate functional groups in a given These modified functional groups compound. however original functional regenerate groups by routine manipulation or in vivo. Prodrugs of compounds of Formula I include compounds wherein a hydroxy, amidino, guanidino, amino, carboxylic or a similar group is modified.

"Pharmaceutically acceptable salts" is as understood by one skilled in the art. Thus a pharmaceutically acceptable salt includes acid or base salts of compounds of Illustrative examples Formula I. of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are mineral acid (hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid, and the like) salts, organic acid (acetic acid, propionic acid, glutamic acid, citric acid and the like) salts, quaternary ammonium (methyl iodide, ethyl iodide, and the like) salts. understood that the pharmaceutically acceptable salts are non-toxic. Additional information on suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts can be found in Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 17th ed., Publishing Company, Easton, PA, 1985, which is incorporated herein by reference.

"Optional" or "optionally" means that the subsequently described event or circumstance may or may not occur, and that the description includes instances where the event or circumstance occurs and instances in which it does not. For example, the phrase "optionally is substituted with one to three substituents" means that the group referred to may or may not be substituted in order to fall within the scope of the invention. Thus the term "optionally substituted" is intended to mean that any one or more hydrogens on a designated atom can be replaced with a selection from the

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

indicated group, provided that the designated atom's normal valence is not exceeded, and that the substitution results in a stable compound. When the substituent is keto (=0) then 2 hydrogens on the atom are replaced. "Optional substituents" , unless otherwise indicated, independently selected from a group consisting of $H; N(R^{10})_2$; NO₂; halogen; aryl; O-C₅₋₁₀ cyclo alkyl substituted with R10; guanidino; urea; thio urea; amidino; para or meta phenoxy; piperidin-4-yloxy; 4-amino-cyclohexyloxy; Imino-ethyl)-piperidin-4-yloxy; 10 1-(1-Imino-ethyl)pyrrolidin-3-yloxy; 2-Amino-3-methyl-butyryl; Acetimidoylamino-cyclohexyloxy; 1-(1-Imino-ethyl)pyrrolidin-2-ylmethoxy; 2-(2-Hydroxycarbonimidoyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-ethoxy; 3,4-Dicyano-phenoxy; SC, alkyl, O-C1-4 COOR¹⁰, C(0)-pyrrolidine; 15 aryl, alkyl, $C(O)CH(NH_2)CH_2OH;$ $C(O)CH(NH_2)CH_2Ph;$ $C(O)CH(NH_2)CH_2COOH;$ Opyrrolidine; C(O)-(CH,),,-imidazole; SO,-N(alkyl),; C(=N)-C,; 2-aminothiazol-5-ylmethoxy; O-CH,-COOH; O-piperidine; pyrrolidine-2-ylmethoxy; 2,4,6-triamino pyrimidin-5ylmethoxy; NH-SO,-alkyl; NHC,-C, alkyl; N(C,-C,), alkyl; CF,; 20 C_{2-10} alkenyl and C_{1-10} alkyl.

The term "alkyl", as used herein, is intended to include branched and straight chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having from 1 to 14 or the specified number of carbon atoms, illustrative examples of which include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, i-propyl, n-butyl, i-butyl, sec-butyl, t-butyl, n-pentyl, and n-hexyl. "Alkenyl" is intended to include a branched or straight chain hydrocarbon group having one or more unsaturated carbon-carbon bonds which may occur in any stable point along the chain, such as ethenyl, propenyl, and the like. The term "alkelene" represents an alkyl group, as defined above, except that it has at least one center of unsaturation, i.e., a double bond. Illustrative examples are butene, propene, and pentene. The term "cycloalkyl", "cycloalkyl ring", "cycloalkyl radical" or "cyclic hydrocarbon" indicates a saturated or partially

10

15

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

unsaturated three to fourteen carbon monocyclic or bicyclic hydrocarbon moiety which is optionally substituted with an alkyl group. Illustrative examples include cyclo propyl, cyclo hexyl, cyclo pentyl, and cyclo butyl. The term "alkoxy" as used herein represents -OC, alkyl.

The terms "Ar" and "aryl", as used herein, are intended to represent a stable substituted or unsubstituted (collectively also referred to as 'optionally substituted') six to fourteen membered mono-, bi- or tri-cyclic hydrocarbon radical comprising carbon and hydrogen atoms. Illustrative examples are phenyl (Ph), naphthyl, anthracyl groups, and piperanyl. It is also intended that the terms "carbocycle" and "carbocyclic" include "Ar", "aryl" as well as "cyclo alkyl" groups, which are defined above. "Halogen" or "halo", as used herein, represents Cl, Br, F or I.

As used herein the term "bicyclic heterocyclic ring structure" is intended to represent a stable 7 to 10 membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is partially unsaturated or unsaturated (aromatic, i.e., heteroaryl) and which consists of carbon atoms and from 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from S, O, and N, preferably nitrogen atoms. nitrogen and sulfur atoms can exist in their respective oxidized states, while the nitrogen atom can also exist in its quaternized form. Illustrative examples of the bicyclic heterocyclic ring structure are 3H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine-2-y1, 3H-pyrrolo[3,2c]pyridine-2-yl, 3H-pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyrimidine-2-yl, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-yl, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-yl, 4H-thiopyrano[4,3-d]oxazole, 1H-indole-2-yl, benzimidazole-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro,1H-indole-2-yl, dihydro-thiopyrano[2,3-b]pyrrole, thieno[2,3-c]pyridine, 4,5-dihydro-1H-benzoimidazole-2-yl, 1Hpyrrolo[2,3c]pyridine, benzooxazole, 4H-thiopyrano[4,3b]furan, 4,5-dihydrofuro[3,2-b]pyridine, 1,7-dihydrothiopyrano-[2,3-b]pyrrole-2-y1, 1,4-dihydro-thiopyrano-[3,4-d]imidazole-2-yl, and 1,5-dihydro pyrano[2,3-

15

20

25

30

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

d]imidazole-2-yl. It is preferred that when the total number of hetero atoms in the heterocycle exceeds 1, then the heteroatoms are not adjacent to one another. Preferred bicyclic heterocyclic ring structures comprise 9 to 10 membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring structures comprising a six membered ring and a five membered ring fused together that the two rings have two common Illustrative examples of the preferred bicyclic heterocyclic ring structures are 1H-indole-2-yl, 1H~ benzimidazole-2-yl.

The term "heteroaryl" is intended to represent a stable 5 to 10 membered aryl group ("aryl" as defined above), wherein one or more of the carbon atoms is replaced by a hetero atom selected from N, O, and S. The hetero atoms can exist in their chemically allowed oxidation states. Thus a Sulfur (S) atom can exist as a sulfide, sulfoxide, or sulfone. Preferred heteroaryl groups are six membered ring systems comprising not more than 2 hetero atoms. Illustrative examples of preferred heteroaryl groups are thienyl, N-substituted succinimide, amino)-5,5-dialkyl-2-cyclohexen-1-one, pyridyl, alkyl theophylline, furyl, pyrrolyl, indolyl, pyrimidinyl, isoxazolyl, purinyl, imidazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazolyl, quinolyl, and pyrazinyl. The "heterocycloalkyl" means a stable cyclo alkyl group containing from 5 to 14 carbon atoms wherein one or more of the carbon atoms is replaced by a hetero atom chosen from N, O and S. The hetero atoms can exist in their chemically allowed oxidation states. Thus Sulfur (S) can exist as a sulfide, sulfoxide, or sulfone. The heterocycloalkyl group can be completely saturated or partially unsaturated. Illustrative examples are piperidine, 1,4-dioxane, morpholine.

As used herein the terms "heterocyclyl",
35 "heterocyclic" and/or "het" are intended to represent a
stable 5- to 7- membered monocyclic or 7- to 10- membered
bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is saturated, partially

15

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

unsaturated, or unsaturated (aromatic), which consists of carbon atoms and from one to 4 hetero atoms independently selected from a group consisting of N, O and S. nitrogen and the sulfur hetero atoms can exist in their respective oxidized states. The heterocyclic ring may be attached to its pendent group at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in a stable structure. The heterocyclic rings described herein may be substituted on a carbon or a nitrogen atom if the resulting compound is stable. The nitrogen in the heterocycle can exist in its quaternized It is preferred that when the total number of hetero atoms in the heterocycle exceeds 1, then the heteroatoms are not adjacent to one another. It is understood that the terms "heterocyclyl", "heterocyclic", and "het" include the terms "heteroaryl", "heterocycloalkyl" and heterocyclic ring structure" as described above.

Preferred "heterocyclyl", "heterocyclic" and/or "het" groups are selected from 1-(2, Hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1yl)-2,3-dimethyl-butan-1-one, 3-Pyridin-2-yl-propan-1-ol, 20 N-(2,3-Dimethoxy-benzyl)-2-hydroxy-acetamide, 1-Methyl-2m-tolyl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine, 2-Methyl-3,4,6,7-tetrahydro-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine-5-carboxamidine, 2-Amino-3-hydroxy-1-(2-methyl-3,4,6,7-tetrahydroimidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-5-yl)-propan-1-one, 2-Amino-1-(2methyl-3,4,6,7-tetrahydro-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-5-yl)-25 ethanone, 2-Methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-3H-imidazo[4,5c]pyridine, N-o-Tolyl-methanesulfonamide, 2-Methylbenzothiazole, 3-Amino-1-(2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidin-1yl)-propan-1-one, 2-Hydroxy-1-(2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidin-30 1-y1)-ethanone, 2-(2-Hydroxy-ethyl)-indan-1,3-dione, Fluoro-2-methyl-1H-benzoimidazole, 2-Methyl-1H-imidazo[4,5c]pyridine, 2-Hydroxy-N-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-2-Methyl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine, 2-Amino-1acetamide, (3-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethanone, 2-Methyl-1Hbenzoimidazol-4-ol, 2-Pyridin-2-yl-ethanol, 35 N-(3-Hydroxypropy1)-2-phenyl-acetamide, N-(3-Hydroxy-propy1)-3-phenylpropionamide, N-(3-Hydroxy-propyl)-benzamide, N-(2-Hydroxy-

25

10

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

ethyl)-2-phenyl-acetamide, (4-Hydroxy-butyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester, (2-Hydroxy-ethyl)-carbamic acid benzyl ester, (4-Hydroxy-piperidin-1-yl)-phenyl-methanone, 4-Bromo-2-methoxy-benzylamine, 3-Methoxy-5-trifluoromethyl-benzylamine, N-(3,5-Dimethoxy-benzyl)-acetamide, 2-Methyl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxamidine, and 2-Hydroxy-N-naphthalen-1-yl-acetamide.

The following structural representations further illustrate the term "het":

and
$$\begin{array}{c}
G_1 \\
G_2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
G_1 \\
G_2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_1 \\
K_2 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_1 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_2 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_3 \\
K_4
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_1 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_2 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_3 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_1 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_2 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
K_3 \\
K_3
\end{array}$$

wherein G_1 and G_2 independently at each occurance represent $S(O)_{0-2}$, NH, $N-R^{24}$, O, CR^{10} , or CHR^{10} ; J_1 , J_2 , J_3 , and J_4 independently represent CR^{10} or N, wherein at least two of J_1 , J_2 , J_3 , and J_4 represent CH; K_1 , K_2 , K_3 and K_4 independently represent $-NHR^{10}$, $-NHR^{24}$, $-CHR^{10}$, $-CH-C(=NH)-NH_2$, or $N-C(=NH)-NH_2$ wherein at least two of K_1 , K_2 , K_3 and K_4 represent CH_2 ; M_1 , M_2 , M_3 and M_4 independently represent $-NHR^{10}$, $-NHR^{24}$, $-CHR^{10}$, $-CH-C(=NH)-NH_2$, or $N-C(=NH)-NH_2$, wherein at least two of M_1 , M_2 , M_3 and M_4 represent CH or CH_2 ; and R^{25} represents H, halogen, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NO_2$, NHR^{10} , $NH-SO_2-R^{10}$, -OH, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amidino, guanidino, $-COOR^{10}$, or $-CONHR^{10}$. The variables R^{10} and R^{24} are as defined earlier. The dashed lines indicate optional unsaturation without violating the valency rules.

The term "basic group" as used under R^7 and R^8 , defined earlier, is intended to represent amidino, guanidino, - $C(=NH)N(R^{10})_2$, 2-imidazoline, -N-amidinomorpholine, N-

15

20

25

30

35

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

amidino piperidine, 4-hydroxy-N-amidino piperidine, N-amidino pyrrolidine, tetrahydro pyrimidine, and thiazolidin-3-yl-methylideneamine. The compounds of the present invention were named using the "Autonom", a Beilstein Commander 2.1 Application, distributed by Beilstein.

The term "natural amino acid", as used herein is intended to represent the twenty naturally occurring amino acids in their 'L' form, which are some times also referred as 'common amino acids', a list of which can be found in Biochemistry, Harper & Row Publishers, Inc. (1983). term "unnatural amino acid", as used herein, is intended to represent the 'D' form of the twenty naturally occurring amino acids described above. It is further understood that the term unnatural amino acid includes homologues of the natural amino acids, and synthetically modified form of the The synthetically modified forms natural amino acids. include amino acids having alkylene chains shortened or lengthened by up to two carbon atoms, amino acids comprising optionally substituted aryl groups, and amino acids comprised halogenated groups, preferably halogenated alkyl and aryl groups.

The term "natural amino acid side chain" is intended to represent a natural amino acid ("natural amino acid" as dfined above) wherein a keto (C=0) group replaces the carboxylic acid group in the amino acid. Thus, for example, an alanine side chain is C(=0)-CH(NH₂)-CH₃; a valine side chain is C(=0)-CH(NH₂)-CH(CH₃); and a cysteine side chain is C(=0)-CH(NH₂)-CH₂-SH. The term "unnatural amino acid side chain" is intended to represent an unnatural amino acid ("unnatural amino acid" as defined above) wherein a keto (C=0) group replaces the carboxylic acid group forming unnatural amino acid side chains similar to ones illustrated under the definition of "natural amino acid side chain" above.

It thus follows that a "N-natural amino acid side chain" substituent and "N-unnatural amino acid side chain"

WO 00/35886 PCT/US99/30302

substituent, which can represent Q, Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , L^1 , L^2 , L^3 and L^4 , is a group wherein the nitrogen atom (N) is the annular ring atom substituted with a natural or unnatural amino acid side chain (natural or unatural amino acid side chain is a defined above). The point of attachment between the nitrogen atom and the natural or unnatural amino acid side chain is at the keto (C=O) group of the respective amino acids. Thus a N-natural amino acid, i.e., N-cysteine, is N-C(=O)-CH(NH₂)-CH,-SH.